THE SPECIFICATIONS AND INFORMATION REGARDING THE PRODUCTS IN THIS MANUAL ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. ALL STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS IN THIS MANUAL ARE BELIEVED TO BE ACCURATE BUT ARE PRESENTED WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. USERS MUST TAKE FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF ANY PRODUCTS.

THE SOFTWARE LICENSE AND LIMITED WARRANTY FOR THE ACCOMPANYING PRODUCT ARE SET FORTH IN THE INFORMATION PACKET THAT SHIPPED WITH THE PRODUCT AND ARE INCORPORATED HEREIN BY THIS REFERENCE. IF YOU ARE UNABLE TO LOCATE THE SOFTWARE LICENSE OR LIMITED WARRANTY, CONTACT YOUR CISCO REPRESENTATIVE FOR A COPY.

The Cisco implementation of TCP header compression is an adaptation of a program developed by the University of California, Berkeley (UCB) as part of UCB's public domain version of the UNIX operating system. All rights reserved. Copyright © 1981, Regents of the University of California.

NOTWITHSTANDING ANY OTHER WARRANTY HEREIN, ALL DOCUMENT FILES AND SOFTWARE OF THESE SUPPLIERS ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND THE ABOVE-NAMED SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THOSE OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE.

IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THIS MANUAL, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

Any Internet Protocol (IP) addresses and phone numbers used in this document are not intended to be actual addresses and phone numbers. Any examples, command display output, network topology diagrams, and other figures included in the document are shown for illustrative purposes only. Any use of actual IP addresses or phone numbers in illustrative content is unintentional and coincidental.

Cisco and the Cisco logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Cisco and/or its affiliates in the U.S. and other countries. To view a list of Cisco trademarks, go to this URL: http://www.cisco.com/go/trademarks. Third-party trademarks mentioned are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (1110R)

© 2016 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.
CONTENTS

Preface

About this Guide xiii

Conventions Used xiii

Supported Documents and Resources xiv

Related Common Documentation xiv

Related Product Documentation xiv

Obtaining Documentation xv

Contacting Customer Support xv

CHAPTER 1

IP Services Gateway Overview 1

Introduction 1

Qualified Platforms 1

License Requirements 2

How it Works 2

RADIUS Server Mode 2

RADIUS Proxy 3

RADIUS Snoop Mode 3

In-line Services 4

Application Detection and Control 4

Content Filtering 4

Enhanced Charging Service 4

Enhanced Feature Support 5

Accounting-On and Accounting-Off Messages 5

IPSG Server Mode 5

IPSG Proxy Mode 5

Content Service Steering 5

Dynamic RADIUS Extensions (Change of Authorization) 6

Gx Interface Support 6
APPENDIX C

CoA, RADIUS DM, and Session Redirection (Hotlining) 31

RADIUS Change of Authorization and Disconnect Message 31
  CoA Overview 31
  DM Overview 32
  License Requirements 32
  Enabling CoA and DM 32
    Enabling CoA and DM 32
    CoA and DM Attributes 33
    CoA and DM Error-Cause Attribute 34
  Viewing CoA and DM Statistics 35

Session Redirection (Hotlining) 36
  Overview 36
    License Requirements 36
  Operation 36
    ACL Rule 36
    Redirecting Subscriber Sessions 36
    Session Limits On Redirection 37
    Stopping Redirection 37
    Handling IP Fragments 37
    Recovery 37
    AAA Accounting 37
  Viewing the Redirected Session Entries for a Subscriber 38

APPENDIX D

Gx Interface Support 41

Rel. 7 Gx Interface 41
  Introduction 42
    Supported Networks and Platforms 44
    License Requirements 44
    Supported Standards 44
  Terminology and Definitions 45
    Policy Control 45
    Charging Control 49
      Charging Correlation 50
    Policy and Charging Control (PCC) Rules 50
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ICSR Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP Rel.9 Compliance for IPFilterRule</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Description</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rel. 10 Gx Interface</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P-GW Rel. 10 Gx Interface Support</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terminology and Definitions</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Reporting Over Gx</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Requirements</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Standards</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Overview</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage Monitoring</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage Reporting</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICSR Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of the Supported-Features AVP on the Gx Interface</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rule-Failure-Code AVP</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sponsored Data Connectivity</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume Reporting</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supported Gx Features</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assume Positive for Gx</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Default Policy on CCR-I Failure</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gx Back off Functionality</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Volume Reporting in Local Policy</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Support for Session Recovery and Session Synchronization</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Gx Assume Positive Feature</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Local Policy Service at Global Configuration Level</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Configuring Failure Handling Template at Global Configuration Level</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Associating Local Policy Service and Failure Handling Template</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verifying Local Policy Service Configuration</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time Reporting Over Gx</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>License Requirements</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feature Overview</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limitations</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage Monitoring</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Usage Monitoring at Session Level</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX E

**Gy Interface Support** 131

Introduction 131
License Requirements 133
Supported Standards 133
Features and Terminology 133
Charging Scenarios 133
  Session Charging with Reservation 133
  Decentralized Unit Determination and Centralized Rating 133
  Centralized Unit Determination and Centralized Rating 133
  Decentralized Unit Determination and Decentralized Rating 134
Basic Operations 134
Re-authorization 135
Threshold based Re-authorization Triggers 135
Termination Action 135
Diameter Base Protocol 135
Diameter Credit Control Application 136
Quota Behavior 136
  Time Quotas 136
  Volume Quota 138
  Units Quota 138
  Granting Quota 138
  Requesting Quota 139
  Reporting Quota 139
Default Quota Handling 140
Thresholds 140
Conditions for Reauthorization of Quota 141
Discarding or Allowing or Buffering Traffic to Flow 141
Procedures for Consumption of Time Quota 141
Envelope Reporting 142
Credit Control Request 142
Tx Timer Expiry Behavior 144
Redirection 144
Contents

Triggers 145
Tariff Time Change 145
Final Unit Indication 146
  Final Unit Indication at Command Level 146
  Final Unit Indication at MSCC Level 146
Credit Control Failure Handling 146
  CCFH with Failover Supported 146
  CCFH with Failover Not Supported 147
Failover Support 147
Recovery Mechanisms 148
Error Mechanisms 148
  Unsupported AVPs 148
  Invalid Answer from Server 148
  Result Code Behavior 148
Supported AVPs 148
Unsupported AVPs 152
PLMN and Time Zone Reporting 158
  Interworking between Session-based Gy and Event-based Gy 159
OCS Unreachable Failure Handling Feature 159
Backpressure Handling 161
  Gy Backpressure Enhancement 162
Gy Support for GTP based S2a/S2b 162
Generating OOC/ROC with Changing Association between Rule and RG 162
Static Rulebase for CCR 163
CC based Selective Gy Session Control 163
  Feature Description 163
    Relationships to Other Features 164
    Limitations 164
Configuring CC based Selective Gy Session Control 164
  Configuring CC Value 164
    Verifying the Selective Gy Session Control Configuration 165
    Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Selective Gy Session Control Feature 165
    show active-charging sessions 165
Configuring Gy Interface Support 166
  Configuring GGSN / P-GW / IPSG Gy Interface Support 166
About this Guide

This preface describes the *IPSG Administration Guide*, how it is organized, and its document conventions. The IP Services Gateway (IPSG) is a StarOS™ application that runs on Cisco® ASR 5x00 and virtualized platforms.

- Conventions Used, page xiii
- Supported Documents and Resources, page xiv

Conventions Used

The following tables describe the conventions used throughout this documentation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notice Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information Note</td>
<td>Provides information about important features or instructions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Caution</td>
<td>Alerts you of potential damage to a program, device, or system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>Alerts you of potential personal injury or fatality. May also alert you of potential electrical hazards.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Typeface Conventions</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Text represented as a screen display</td>
<td>This typeface represents displays that appear on your terminal screen, for example: Login:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text represented as commands</td>
<td>This typeface represents commands that you enter, for example: show ip access-list This document always gives the full form of a command in lowercase letters. Commands are not case sensitive.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Supported Documents and Resources

Related Common Documentation

The most up-to-date information for this product is available in the product Release Notes provided with each product release.

The following common documents are available:

- **AAA Interface Administration and Reference**
- **Command Line Interface Reference**
- **GTPP Interface Administration and Reference**
- **Installation Guide** (hardware dependent)
- **VPC-SI System Administration Guide**
- **Release Change Reference**
- **SNMP MIB Reference**
- **Statistics and Counters Reference**
- **System Administration Guide** (hardware dependent)
- **Thresholding Configuration Guide**

Related Product Documentation

The following product documents are also available and work in conjunction with IPSG:

- **ADC Administration Guide**
- **ECS Administration Guide**
- **GGSN Administration Guide**
Obtaining Documentation

The most current Cisco documentation is available on the following website:
http://www.cisco.com/cisco/web/psa/default.html
Use the following path selections to access the IPSG documentation:
Products > Wireless > Mobile Internet> Network Functions > Cisco IPSG IP Services

Contacting Customer Support

Use the information in this section to contact customer support.
Refer to the support area of http://www.cisco.com for up-to-date product documentation or to submit a service request. A valid username and password are required to access this site. Please contact your Cisco sales or service representative for additional information.
IP Services Gateway Overview

This chapter provides an overview of the IP Services Gateway (IPSG) product. This chapter covers the following topics:

- **Introduction**, page 1
- **How it Works**, page 2
- **In-line Services**, page 4
- **Enhanced Feature Support**, page 5

### Introduction

The IP Services Gateway (IPSG) is a stand-alone device capable of providing managed services to IP flows. The IPSG is situated on the network side of legacy, non-service capable GGSNs, PDSNs, HAs, and other subscriber management devices. The IPSG can provide per-subscriber services such as Enhanced Charging Service, Application Detection and Control, and others.

The IPSG allows the carrier to roll out advanced services without requiring a replacement of the HA, PDSN, GGSN, or other access gateways and eliminates the need to add multiple servers to support additional services. IPSG only requires a RADIUS request (access and accounting messages) with all the required mandatory attributes to create a session. Currently, IPSG supports GGSN (2G, 3G), PDSN, HA, Broadband Remote Access Server (B-RAS), and limited support on P-GW (4G). For the list of AAA attributes supported by IPSG, refer to the *IP Services Gateway AAA AVP Support* appendix.

### Qualified Platforms

IPSG is a StarOS™ application that runs on Cisco® ASR 5x00 and virtualized platforms. For additional platform information, refer to the appropriate *System Administration Guide* and/or contact your Cisco account representative.
License Requirements

The IP Services Gateway is a licensed Cisco product. Separate session and feature licenses may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on licensing requirements.

For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

How it Works

The IPSG supports the following service modes:

- RADIUS Server Mode, on page 2
- RADIUS Snoop Mode, on page 3

RADIUS Server Mode

When configured in RADIUS server mode, the IPSG inspects identical RADIUS accounting request packets sent to the RADIUS accounting server and the IPSG simultaneously.

As shown in the following figure, the IPSG inspects the RADIUS accounting request, extracts the required user information, then sends a RADIUS accounting response message back to the access gateway. The IPSG has three reference points: sn, si, and sr. The sn interface transmits/receives data packets to/from the access gateway (GGSN, HA, PDSN, etc.). The si interface transmits/receives data packets to/from the Internet or a packet data network. The sr interface receives RADIUS accounting requests from the access gateway. The system inspects the accounting request packets and extracts information to be used to determine the appropriate service(s) to apply to the flow.

Figure 1: IPSG Message/Data Flow (RADIUS Server Mode)
RADIUS Proxy

In the event that the Access Gateway is incapable of sending two separate RADIUS Start messages, the IPSG can be configured as a RADIUS Proxy. As shown in the following figure, the IPSG receives an IPSG RADIUS proxy Access request, then generates the Authentication and Accounting requests to the AAA Server.

Figure 2: IPSG Message/Data Flow (RADIUS Server Mode - RADIUS Proxy)

RADIUS Snoop Mode

When configured in RADIUS snoop mode, the IPSG simply inspects RADIUS accounting request packets sent to a RADIUS server through the IPSG.

As shown in the following figure, the IPSG has three reference points: sn, si, and sr. The sn interface transmits/receives data packets to/from the access gateway (GGSN, HA, PDSN, etc.). The si interface transmits/receives data packets to/from the Internet or a packet data network. The sr interface receives RADIUS accounting requests from the access gateway. The system inspects the accounting request packets and extracts information to be used to determine the appropriate service(s) to apply to the flow. Information is not extracted...
from the RADIUS accounting responses so they are sent directly to the access gateway by the RADIUS Server, but can also be sent back through the IPSG.

**Figure 3: IPSG Message/Data Flow (RADIUS Snoop Mode)**

### In-line Services

As described previously, the IPSG provides a method of inspecting RADIUS packets to discover user identity for the purpose of applying enhanced services to the subsequent data flow. Internal applications such as the Enhanced Charging Service, Content Filtering, and Application Detection and Control are primary features that take advantage of the IPSG service.

### Application Detection and Control

Application Detection and Control (ADC) is an in-line service feature that detects peer-to-peer protocols in real time and applies actions such as permitting, blocking, charging, bandwidth control, and TOS marking.

For more information, refer to the *Application Detection and Control Administration Guide*.

### Content Filtering

Content Filtering is an in-line service feature that filters HTTP and WAP requests from mobile subscribers based on the URLs in the requests. This enables operators to filter and control the content that an individual subscriber can access, so that subscribers are inadvertently not exposed to universally unacceptable content and/or content inappropriate as per the subscribers' preferences.

For more information, refer to the *Content Filtering Services Administration Guide*.

### Enhanced Charging Service

Enhanced Charging Service (ECS)/Active Charging Service (ACS) is the primary vehicle performing packet inspection and applying rules to the session which includes the delivery of enhanced services.
For more information, refer to the Enhanced Charging Service Administration Guide.

Enhanced Feature Support

This section describes the enhanced features supported by IPSG.

Accounting-On and Accounting-Off Messages

This feature introduces IPSG support for Accounting-On and Accounting-Off RADIUS accounting messages, in addition to the existing start, interim-update, and stop messages. The Accounting-On message sent by the peer RADIUS client indicates that the RADIUS client has restarted and is ready to accept calls. An Accounting-Off message indicates that the peer RADIUS client is shutting down. IPSG clears the existing subscriber sessions on receiving the Accounting-On/Off messages, and proxies the message to the RADIUS server (Proxy mode). The existing sessions are cleared based on the NAS-IP address of the subscriber that was assigned when the Acct-start message was created. If there is no NAS-IP-Address available, the peer IP address is considered as the NAS-IP-Address for the session. IPSG clears calls based on the NAS-IP address AVP in the Accounting-On/Off message irrespective of the origin of the message.

IPSG Server Mode

In the server mode, IPSG acts like the RADIUS server and on receiving an Accounting-On message, IPSG clears the existing sessions based on the NAS-IP address and sends a response to the RADIUS client. When an Accounting-Off message is received, IPSG clears the existing sessions mapped to that NAS-IP address and sends a response to the client. Only the first Accounting-On/Off message from the RADIUS client is addressed and the sessions are not cleared for retries. However, a response is sent to the RADIUS client for the retries.

IPSG Proxy Mode

In the proxy mode, when IPSG receives the Accounting-On/Off message from the RADIUS client, IPSG clears the subscriber sessions based on the NAS-IP address and proxies the message to the RADIUS server. IPSG then proxies the response from the RADIUS server back to the RADIUS client. Only the first Accounting-On/Off message from the RADIUS client is addressed. The corresponding messages are proxied directly to the RADIUS server and the response proxied back to the RADIUS client.

Content Service Steering

Content Service Steering (CSS), defines how traffic is handled by the system based on the content of the data presented by a mobile subscriber. CSS can be used to direct traffic to in-line services that are internal to the system. CSS controls how subscriber data is forwarded to a particular in-line service, but does not control the content.

IPSG supports steering subscriber sessions to Content Filtering Service based on their policy setting. If a subscriber does not have a policy setting (ACL name) requiring Content Filtering, their session will bypass the Content Filtering Service and will be routed on to the destination address.
If subscriber policy entitlements indicate that filtering is required for a subscriber, CSS is used to steer subscriber sessions to the Content Filtering in-line service.

If a subscriber is using a mobile application with protocol type not supported, their session will bypass the Content Filtering Service and will be efficiently routed on to destination address.

For more information regarding CSS, refer to the Content Service Steering chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Dynamic RADIUS Extensions (Change of Authorization)

Dynamic RADIUS extension support provides operators with greater control over subscriber PDP contexts by providing the ability to dynamically redirect data traffic, and or disconnect the PDP context.

This functionality is based on the RFC 3576, Dynamic Authorization Extensions to Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS), July 2003 standard.

The system supports the configuration and use of the following dynamic RADIUS extensions:

- **Change of Authorization**: The system supports CoA messages from the AAA server to change data filters associated with a subscriber session. The CoA request message from the AAA server must contain attributes to identify NAS and the subscriber session and a data filter ID for the data filter to apply to the subscriber session.

- **Disconnect Message**: The DM message is used to disconnect subscriber sessions in the system from a RADIUS server. The DM request message should contain necessary attributes to identify the subscriber session.

The above extensions can be used to dynamically re-direct subscriber PDP contexts to an alternate address for performing functions such as provisioning and/or account set up. This functionality is referred to as Session Redirection, or Hotlining.

Session redirection provides a means to redirect subscriber traffic to an external server by applying ACL rules to the traffic of an existing or a new subscriber session. The destination address and optionally the destination port of TCP/IP or UDP/IP packets from the subscriber are rewritten so the packet is forwarded to the designated redirected address.

Return traffic to the subscriber has the source address and port rewritten to the original values. The redirect ACL may be applied dynamically by means of the RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) extension.

---

**Important**

For more information on dynamic RADIUS extensions support, refer the CoA, RADIUS, and Session Redirection (Hotlining) appendix of this guide.

Gx Interface Support

To support roaming IMS subscribers in a GPRS/UMTS network, the IPSG must be able to charge only for the amount of resources consumed by the particular IMS application and bandwidth used. The IPSG must also allow for the provisioning and control of the resources used by the IMS subscriber. To facilitate this, the IPSG supports the R7 Gx interface to a Policy Control and Charging Rule Function (PCRF).

For detailed information on Gx Interface support, refer to the Gx Interface Support appendix in the IP Services Gateway Administration Guide.
Note the following for IPSG:

- Only single bearer/session concept is supported. Multiple bearer concept is not applicable.
- Only PCRF binding is applicable. PCEF binding is not applicable.

The following figure shows the interface and basic message flow of the Gx interface.

**Figure 4: IPSG Message/Data Flow (RADIUS Server Mode - IMS Auth Service)**

IPSG also supports IMS Authorization Service Session Recovery with the following limitations:

- Active calls only
- The number of rules recovered is limited to the following:
  - 3 flow-descriptions per charging-rule-definition
  - 3 Charging-rule-definitions per PDP context
- The above are combined limits for opened/closed gates and for uplink and downlink rules. IMSA sessions with rules more than the above are not recoverable.

**Gy Interface Support**

This is a Diameter protocol-based interface over which the IPSG communicates with a Charging Trigger Function (CTF) server that provides online charging data. Gy interface support provides an online charging interface that works with the ECS deep packet inspection feature. With Gy, customer traffic can be gated and billed in an "online" or "prepaid" style. Both time- and volume-based charging models are supported. In all of these models, differentiated rates can be applied to different services based on shallow or deep packet inspection.

For more information on Gy interface support, refer to the Gy Interface Support appendix in the IP Services Gateway Administration Guide.
Lawful Intercept

The Cisco Lawful Intercept feature is supported on the IPSG. Lawful Intercept is a license-enabled, standards-based feature that provides telecommunications service providers with a mechanism to assist law enforcement agencies in monitoring suspicious individuals for potential illegal activity. For additional information and documentation on the Lawful Intercept feature, contact your Cisco account representative.

Multiple IPSG Services

Multiple IPSG services, can be configured on the system using different contexts. Each such IPSG service functions independently as an IPSG. Both source and destination contexts must be different for each IPSG service.

Overlapping IP Support over VLAN

Support for overlapping IP addresses for subscribers serviced by access networks on IPSG using VLANs is now possible through this feature. Overlapping IP addresses can be set up by defining multiple interfaces on the Sn interface (access side) and binding them to separate VLANs, while a single interface is setup to separate traffic using VPNv4 on the Si side (network side). When IPSG receives a packet, the appropriate session is identified based on the combination of IP address and VLAN. Currently, a maximum of 500 VLANs can be configured.

IPSG running on Cisco ASR 5000 acts as a BGPv4 peer (BGP proxy) per VLAN on the Sn interface, and MP-BGP peer on the Si interface. There can be 500 BGPv4 peers on the access side. IPSG can support a maximum of 64 BGP sessions per context, and hence 8 contexts are required to address 500 BGP sessions. On the Si interface, one VPNv4 per context is used, with a maximum of 8 VPNv4 contexts (if 8 contexts are used). The Sn and Si interfaces must be in the same context.

The session creation and deletion on IPSG is triggered on receiving the enriched AAA Accounting Start/Stop requests from the Cisco Account Register (CAR) AAA. The VLAN information is forwarded using the SN1-Assigned-VLAN-ID AVP.

This feature can be enabled using the CLI in the IPSG RADIUS Server Configuration Mode. Refer the IP Services Gateway Configuration chapter for configuration information.
Call Flows for Overlapping IP Support over VLAN

The following call flow illustration and descriptions explain how a session is created:

*Figure 5: Session Creation Call Flow*
Table 1: Session Creation Call Flow Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1—3</td>
<td>BGP peering is established and routes exchange between ISG, BGPv4 routers, IPSG and MP-BGP router.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6—10</td>
<td>Unauthenticated Phase: In the pre-auth stage, the applicable username and other attributes pertaining to the subscriber are not available. The session creation request (Accounting-Start Req) at IPSG contains Username=UE IP (this should be string type), Framed-IP-Address=UE IP, Calling-Station-Id=&quot;000000000000000&quot;, 3GPP-IMSI=&quot;000000000000000&quot;, SN-Assigned-VLAN-ID=VlanId, Called-Station-Id=&quot;UnauthEud&quot;; 3GPP-RAT-Type=&quot;UTRAN&quot;.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12—22</td>
<td>HTTP redirection occurs at IPSG.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>The user between the ISG and CAR/SIS is authenticated using and user credentials like EndUserName, EndUserId used for 3GPP-IMSI, Calling-Station-id, auth APN to be used etc are obtained.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24—28</td>
<td>ISG/CAR send a new Accounting Start with the actual user credentials obtained from CAR/SIS subsystems. The same IP address and VLAN ID used during the un-phase is used again. The Username, Calling-Station-Id and APN are updated to reflect the actual user credentials. The replacement feature at IPSG based on diff-key is enabled at IPSG so the new session request replaces the earlier one for the same IP and VLAN-ID. Otherwise, ISG/CAR sends an Accounting-Stop for the previous session created for the un-authenticated user before sending the Accounting-Start for the authenticated user.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>The uplink and downlink data call flow is same as steps 12-22, where the VLAN tagged data on the Sn interface is mapped to the MPLS tagged data on the Si side and vice-versa.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Dictionary Requirements

This section provides AVP requirements for the overlapping IP support over VLAN feature.

The following are the AVPs required, based on dictionaries starent-vsai or custom54

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AVP</th>
<th>STARENT-VSA1</th>
<th>CUSTOM54</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-Name</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>For custom54, if present, this AVP is used. Otherwise, a default value &quot;void&quot; is used as the username in ipsgmgr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling-Station-Id</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>For starent-vsai, this AVP will be set to null and processed in ipsgmgr.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Radius Client IP Validation

This feature enables IPSG to validate RADIUS accounting messages from different configured RADIUS client IP addresses, and forward requests to the session manager.

In an architecture where multiple sites of IPSG and Radius Proxies exist, GGSN forwards RADIUS accounting messages to IPSG through its Radius Proxy. In an event where the Radius Proxy is unreachable, GGSN forwards subsequent messages using the RADIUS Proxy belonging to another site. IPSG updates the RADIUS client IP in the subscriber session, and forwards all control messages from the session manager to the alternate client.

This feature can be enabled using the `validate-client-ip` keyword in the `radius accounting` command under the IPSG RADIUS Server Configuration Mode. By default, the RADIUS client IPs are validated, and can be disabled using the `disable radius accounting validate-client-ip` command.

### Session Recovery

The Session Recovery feature provides seamless failover and reconstruction of subscriber session information in the event of a hardware or software fault within the system preventing a fully connected user session from being disconnected.

Session recovery is performed by mirroring key software processes (for example, Session Manager and AAA Manager) within the system. These mirrored processes remain in an idle state (in standby-mode), wherein they perform no processing, until they may be needed in the case of a software failure (for example, a Session Manager task aborts). The system spawns new instances of "standby mode" session and AAA Managers for each active Control Processor (CP) being used.

Additionally, other key system-level software tasks, such as VPN Manager, are performed on a physically separate packet processing card to ensure that a double software fault (for example, Session Manager and VPN Manager fails at same time on same card) cannot occur. The packet processing card used to host the

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>AVP</th>
<th>STARENT-VSA1</th>
<th>CUSTOM54</th>
<th>Additional Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Session-Id</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Optional for Radio Access requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Called-Station-Id</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Optional for Subscriber profile and Radio Access requests.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN-Assigned-VLAN-ID</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>This AVP is used to forward the VLAN ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN-Transparent-Data</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>Optional</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN-Vpn-Name</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>Mandatory</td>
<td>This AVP is used to forward the VPN name (destination context).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VPN Manager process is in active mode and is reserved by the operating system for this sole use when session recovery is enabled.

For more information on Session Recovery, refer to the Session Recovery chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Note that the Inter-Chassis Session Recovery feature is not supported in this release.
IP Services Gateway Configuration

This chapter describes how to configure the IPSG.
This chapter covers the following topics:

- Configuration Requirements for the IPSG, page 13
- Configuring the IPSG, page 17

Configuration Requirements for the IPSG

This section provides a high-level description of the configuration requirements of the IPSG.
The Snoop and Server methods use the same configuration components and differ only in how the IPSG service is configured.
The IPSG can be configured in various ways such as by creating a single context with interfaces for the RADIUS messages and both inbound and outbound data traffic. The following figure presents another method in which the IPSG context manages communication with the access gateway for both RADIUS messaging and inbound data traffic. The ISP context is responsible for all outbound data traffic.
The following figure also shows other important components such as IP access control lists (ACLs) in both contexts as well as an Enhanced Charging Service (ECS) configuration.

Figure 6: IPSG Support

Required Configuration File Components

The following configuration components are required to complete an IPSG configuration file:

- IPSG License
- Card Activations
- Local Context Modifications
  - Network Management Interface
  - Remote Management
  - Administrative Users
- Global Enhanced Charging Service Configuration
- IPSG Context
  - IPSG Service
  - RADIUS Server or Client Configuration
  - Interface for RADIUS messages to/from access gateway
  - Interface for data traffic to/from access gateway
• Service Provider Context
  • IP ACL Configuration
    • Interface for data traffic to/from access gateway

• Port Configuration (bindings)

Required Component Information
Prior to configuring the system, determine the following information:
• Context names
• Service names
• Enhanced Charging Service
  • Rule definitions
  • Rulebase name

• IMS Auth Service
• RADIUS accounting client IP address, dictionary type, and shared secret (RADIUS Server Mode)
• RADIUS accounting server IP address and dictionary type (RADIUS Snoop Mode)
• All Interfaces and ports
  • Interface IP addresses
  • Interface names
  • Port names
  • Port numbers

For a complete understanding of the required information for all configuration mode commands, refer to the Command Line Interface Reference.

IPSG RADIUS Dictionaries
The following table provides information on the different IPSG RADIUS dictionaries and the corresponding usage:
### Table 2: IPSG RADIUS Dictionaries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dictionary</th>
<th>Mandatory Attributes</th>
<th>Session Identity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>starent-vsa1</td>
<td>User-Name</td>
<td>User-Name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acct-Sess-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Called-Station-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom28</td>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Calling-station-Id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acct-Sess-Id</td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Called-Station-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calling-Station-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>custom54</td>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>Calling-station-id</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Acct-Sess-Id</td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Called-Station-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Calling-Station-Id</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Configuring the IPSG

This section describes how to configure the IPSG to accept RADIUS accounting requests (start messages) in order to extract user information used to apply other services. The following figure illustrates the required components within the system supporting IPSG.

Figure 7: IPSG Configuration Detail

To configure the system to perform as an IPSG:

**Step 1**  
Set initial configuration parameters such as activating processing cards and modifying the local context by referring to procedures in the *System Administration Guide*.

**Step 2**  
Configure the global active charging parameters as described in the *Enhanced Charging Service Administration Guide*.

**Step 3**  
Configure the system to perform as an IPSG by applying the example configurations presented in IPSG Context and Service Configuration, on page 18.

**Step 4**  
Configure the Service Provider context by applying the example configuration presented in ISP Context Configuration, on page 19.

**Step 5**  
Bind interfaces to ports as described in the *System Administration Guide*.

**Step 6**  
Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command **save configuration**. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the *System Administration Guide* and the *Command Line Interface Reference*.

**Important**  
Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the *Command Line Interface Reference* for complete information regarding all commands.
IPSG Context and Service Configuration

To configure IPSG context and service:

### Step 1
Create an IPSG context and the IPSG service by applying the example configuration in one of the following sections as required:

- Option 1: RADIUS Server Mode Configuration, on page 18
- Option 2: RADIUS Server with Proxy Mode Configuration, on page 18
- Option 3: RADIUS Snoop Mode Configuration, on page 19

### Step 2
Create two interfaces within the IPSG context for communication with the access gateway by referring to the Creating and Configuring Ethernet Interfaces and Ports procedure in the System Administration Guide.

### Option 1: RADIUS Server Mode Configuration
To create an IPSG context and IPSG service in RADIUS Server Mode, use the following configuration:

```text
configure
  context ipsg_context_name
    ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
      bind address ipv4/ipv6_address
      radius dictionary dictionary_name
      radius accounting client ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key [dictionary dictionary_name]
      [ disconnect-message [ dest-port port_number ] ]
    end
end
```

### Option 2: RADIUS Server with Proxy Mode Configuration
To create an IPSG context and IPSG service in RADIUS Server Mode with IPSG authentication and accounting proxy configuration, use the following configuration:

```text
configure
  context ipsg_context_name
    ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
      bind address ipv4/ipv6_address
      radius dictionary dictionary_name
      radius accounting client ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key [dictionary dictionary_name]
      [ disconnect-message [ dest-port port_number ] ]
  # IPSG Authentication Proxy Configuration:
    bind authentication-proxy address ipv4/ipv6_address
    connection authorization [encrypted] password password
    radius dictionary dictionary_name
    radius accounting client ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key [dictionary dictionary_name]
    [ disconnect-message [ dest-port port_number ] ]
  end
end
```

```bash
exit
aaa group default
```


radius attribute nas-ip-address address ipv4/ipv6_address
radius dictionary dictionary_name
radius server ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key key port port_number
radius accounting server ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key key port port_number
exit

# IPSG Accounting Proxy Configuration:

ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
  bind accounting-proxy address ipv4/ipv6_address port port_number
  radius dictionary dictionary_name
  radius accounting client ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key secret_key [dictionary dictionary_name] [disconnect-message [ dest-port port_number ] ]
exit
aaagroup default
radius attribute nas-ip-address address ipv4/ipv6_address
radius dictionary dictionary_name
radius accounting server ipv4/ipv6_address [encrypted] key key port port_number
end

Notes:

• If both IPSG Service and client/server dictionaries are configured, the client/server dictionary takes precedence over the IPSG Service dictionary.

• If both RADIUS server and client dictionaries are configured, the client dictionary takes precedence over the server dictionary.

• For basic AAA configurations please refer to the AAA and GTP Interface Administration and Reference.

Option 3: RADIUS Snoop Mode Configuration

To create an IPSG context and IPSG service in RADIUS Snoop Mode, use the following configuration:

configure
  context ipsg_context_name
    ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-snoop
      bind
        connection authorization [encrypted] password password
        radius accounting server ipv4/ipv6_address
        radius dictionary dictionary_name
    end

ISP Context Configuration

To configure the ISP context:

Step 1. Create an ISP context as described in Creating the ISP Context, on page 20.
Step 2. Create an interface within the ISP context to connect to the data network as described in the System Administration Guide.
Step 3. Create an IP access control list within the ISP context as described in the IP Access Control Lists chapter of the System Administration Guide.
Creating the ISP Context

To configure an ISP context, use the following configuration. Note that the following configuration also includes an IP route for data traffic through the IPSG context.

```configure
context isp_context_name
    subscriber default
    exit
ip access-list access_list_name
    redirect css service css_service_name any
    permit any
    exit
aaa group default
    exit
ip route {ipv4_address/mask | ipv6_address} next-hop next_hop_ipv4/ipv6_address
isp_data_interface_name
end
```

Enhanced and Optional Configurations

This section provides information on enhanced and optional configurations:

- Virtual APN Support Configuration, on page 20
- Gx Interface Configuration, on page 21
- Gy Interface Configuration, on page 21
- Overlapping IP Support over VPN Configuration, on page 21
- Radius Client IP Validation, on page 21
- Responding to Accounting-Stop Messages for Non-Existing Sessions, on page 22

Virtual APN Support Configuration

To configure Virtual APN Support use the following configuration:

```configure
context ipsg_context_name
    apn apn_name
    virtual-apn preference priority apn apn_name [ access-gw-address { ipv4/ipv6_address | ipv4/ipv6_address/mask } ] || msisdn-range { from msisdn_start_range to msisdn_end_range } || rat-type { eutran | gan | geran | hspa | utran | wlan } ]
    exit
# RADIUS Server and/or RADIUS Snoop mode
    ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
    ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-snoop
    profile { APN | subscriber }
end
```

Notes:
The IPSG Virtual APN feature allows operators to use a single APN to configure differentiated services. The APN selection is based on the APN supplied to the IPSG in conjunction with the following configurable parameters:

- access-gw-address (for IPSG this means the RADIUS client)
- msisdn-range
- rat-type

For more information, refer to the virtual-apn CLI command in the APN Configuration Mode Commands chapter of the Command Line Interface Reference.

Gx Interface Configuration

For information on how to configure R7 Gx interface support, please refer to the Configuring Rel. 7 Gx Interface section of the Gx Interface Support appendix.

Note the following for IPSG:

- Only single bearer/session concept is supported. Multiple bearer concept is not applicable.
- Only PCRF binding is applicable. PCEF binding is not applicable.

Gy Interface Configuration

For information on how to configure Gy interface support, refer to the Gy Interface Support appendix.

Overlapping IP Support over VPN Configuration

To enable Overlapping IP Support over VPN, use the following configuration:

```config
context context_name
   ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
       [ default | no ] overlapping-ip-address
end
```

Notes:

- This feature is disabled by default.

Radius Client IP Validation

To enable IPSG to validate RADIUS client IP address, use the following configuration:

```config
context context_name
   ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
       [ default | radius accounting validate-client-ip
end
```

Notes:

- This feature is enabled by default.
• Use the `disable radius accounting validate-client-ip` command to disable IPSG from validating the RADIUS client IPs.

**Responding to Accounting-Stop Messages for Non-Existing Sessions**

To enable the IPSG service to respond to a RADIUS Accounting-Stop message for a session that does not exist anymore (For example: IPSG service is reset and all active sessions are lost), use the following configuration:

```plaintext
config context context_name
  ipsg-service ipsg_service_name mode radius-server
    | default | no | respond-to-non-existing-session
end
```

**Notes:**

• This feature is disabled by default.
IP Services Gateway AAA AVP Support

This appendix presents a quick reference for message-level AVP support for the IPSG.

The following table describes the indicators used in the quick reference table.

**Table 3: Indicators used in the Quick Reference Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mandatory, one or more instances of the AVP MUST be present in the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>Optional, zero or more instances of the AVP MAY be present in the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Conditional, the AVP can be mandatory or optional depending on the dictionary used.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 4: IPSG AVP Support Quick Reference Table**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Attribute</th>
<th>Accounting-Request-Start</th>
<th>Accounting-Request-Interim</th>
<th>Accounting-Request-Stop</th>
<th>Access-Request</th>
<th>Disconnect-Message Request (PoD message initiated by IPSG)</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>User-Name</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Optional for custom54. If this AVP is present, it is used. Else a default value &quot;void&quot; will be used as username in ipsgmgr. Mandatory for starent-vsa1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Status-Type</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Session-Id</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Start</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Interim</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Stop</td>
<td>Access-Request</td>
<td>Disconnect-Message Request (PoD message initiated by IPSG)</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Framed-IP-Address</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mandatory if Framed-ipv6-Prefix in not present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Framed-Ipv6-Prefix</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>Mandatory if Framed-IP-Address is not present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calling-Station-ID</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Optional for starten-vs1. Even though the AVP is present, it will be set to NULL and processed by ipsgmg. Mandatory for custom54.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Called-Station-ID</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Optional for profile subscriber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>User-Password</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Event-Timestamp</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS-Port-Id</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS-Port</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS-Port-Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS-IP-Address</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>IPv4 address of the GGSN for communication with the AAA server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NAS-Identifier</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Hostname of the GGSN for communication with the AAA server.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Framed-Protocol</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Input-Packets</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Start</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Interim</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Stop</td>
<td>Access-Request</td>
<td>Disconnect-Message Request (PoD message initiated by IPSG)</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Output-Packets</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Optional, otherwise IPSG configured value used in CPC Request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Authentic</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acct-Delay-Time</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vendor-Specific</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service-Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connect-Info</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proxy-State</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-IMSI</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Contains the charging characteristics for this PDP context received in the Create PDP Context request message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-Charging Characteristics</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Represents the QoS profile for the PDP context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-Negotiated-QoS-Profile</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Represents the QoS profile for the PDP context.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-GGSN-MCC-MNC</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>MCC-MNC of the network the GGSN belongs to.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Start</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Interim</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Stop</td>
<td>Access-Request</td>
<td>Disconnect-Message Request (PoD message initiated by IPSG)</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-SGSN-MCC-MNC</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>For GGSN and PGW connected to a Gn/Gp SGSN, it represents the MCC and MNC extracted from the RAI within the Create PDP Context Request or Update PDP ContextRequest message. For P-GW in GTP/PMIP S5/S8 it represents the MCC and MNC extracted from the Serving Network.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-RAT-Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-SGSN-Address</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-GGSN-Address</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>It represents the IPv4 address that is used by the GTP control plane for the context establishment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-User-Location-Info</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Used to inform the change in user location.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-IMEISV</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-Charging-Id</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Not used in IPSG. Contains the selection mode for this PDP context received in the Create PDP Context request message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attribute</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Start</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Interim</td>
<td>Accounting-Request-Stop</td>
<td>Access-Request</td>
<td>Disconnect-Message Request (PoD message initiated by IPSG)</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-NSAPI</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Identifies a particular PDP context for the associated PDN and MSISDN/IMSI from creation to deletion.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-PDP-Type</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>Not used in IPSG. PDP type determined based on IPv4 or IPv6 address.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3GPP-MS-TimeZone</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN-Transparent-Data</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN1-Transparent-Data</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN-Assigned-VLAN-ID</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN1-Assigned-VLAN-ID</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN1-Vpn-Name</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Mandatory if the Overlapping IP Address feature is enabled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IP Services Gateway Engineering Rules

This appendix lists IPSG-specific engineering rules that must be considered prior to configuring the system for your network deployment. General and network-specific rules are available in the appendix of the System Administration Guide for the specific network type.

The following rules are covered in this appendix:

- IPSG Context and Service Rules, page 29
- IPSG RADIUS Messaging Rules, page 29

**IPSG Context and Service Rules**

- Only one IPSG service can be configured within a context.
- Single context configurations must have the ingress port identified using the `ingress-mode` command in the Ethernet Port Configuration Mode.
- In single context configurations, if data packets are received before a session is initiated, the packets could be routed to their destination without being processed. Use separate ingress and egress contexts to prevent this issue.

**IPSG RADIUS Messaging Rules**

- The sending of RADIUS accounting start messages to the RADIUS server is delayed by the IPSG until a session is successfully started.
CoA, RADIUS DM, and Session Redirection (Hotlining)

This chapter describes Change of Authorization (CoA), Disconnect Message (DM), and Session Redirect (Hotlining) support in the system. RADIUS attributes, Access Control Lists (ACLs) and filters that are used to implement these features are discussed. The product administration guides provide examples and procedures for configuration of basic services on the system. It is recommended that you select the configuration example that best meets your service model, and configure the required elements for that model, as described in this Administration Guide, before using the procedures in this chapter.

Important

Not all functions, commands, and keywords/variables are available or supported for all network function or services. This depends on the platform type and the installed license(s).

- RADIUS Change of Authorization and Disconnect Message, page 31
- Session Redirection (Hotlining), page 36

RADIUS Change of Authorization and Disconnect Message

This section describes how the system implements CoA and DM RADIUS messages and how to configure the system to use and respond to CoA and DM messages.

CoA Overview

The system supports CoA messages from the AAA server to change data filters associated with a subscriber session. The CoA request message from the AAA server must contain attributes to identify NAS and the subscriber session and a data filter ID for the data filter to apply to the subscriber session. The filter-id attribute (attribute ID 11) contains the name of an Access Control List (ACL). For detailed information on configuring ACLs, refer to the IP Access Control Lists chapter in the System Administration Guide.

If the system successfully executes a CoA request, a CoA-ACK message is sent back to the RADIUS server and the data filter is applied to the subscriber session. Otherwise, a CoA-NAK message is sent with an error-cause attribute without making any changes to the subscriber session.
Changing ACL and rulebase together in a single CoA is not supported. For this, two separate CoA requests can be sent through AAA server requesting for one attribute change per request.

**DM Overview**

The DM message is used to disconnect subscriber sessions in the system from a RADIUS server. The DM request message should contain necessary attributes to identify the subscriber session. If the system successfully disconnects the subscriber session, a DM-ACK message is sent back to the RADIUS server, otherwise, a DM-NAK message is sent with proper error reasons.

**License Requirements**

The RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) and Disconnect Message (DM) are licensed Cisco features. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

**Enabling CoA and DM**

To enable RADIUS Change of Authorization and Disconnect Message:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Step 1</td>
<td>Enable the system to listen for and respond to CoA and DM messages from the RADIUS server as described in Enabling CoA and DM, on page 32.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 2</td>
<td>Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command <code>save configuration</code>. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step 3</td>
<td>View CoA and DM message statistics as described in Viewing CoA and DM Statistics, on page 35.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Important**

Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for complete information regarding all commands. Not all commands and keywords/variables are available or supported. This depends on the platform type and the installed license(s).

**Enabling CoA and DM**

Use the following example to enable the system to listen for and respond to CoA and DM messages from the RADIUS server:

```
configure
  context <context_name>
```
radius change-authorize-nas-ip <ipv4/ipv6_address>
end

Notes:

• `<context_name>` must be the name of the AAA context where you want to enable CoA and DM.

For more information on configuring the AAA context, if you are using StarOS 12.3 or an earlier release, refer to the Configuring Context-Level AAA Functionality section of the AAA and GTPP Interface Administration and Reference. If you are using StarOS 14.0 or a later release, refer to the AAA Interface Administration and Reference.

• A number of optional keywords and variables are available for the `radius change-authorize-nas-ip` command. For more information regarding this command please refer to the Command Line Interface Reference.

CoA and DM Attributes

For CoA and DM messages to be accepted and acted upon, the system and subscriber session to be affected must be identified correctly.

To identify the system, use any one of the following attributes:

• NAS-IP-Address: NAS IP address if present in the CoA/DM request should match with the NAS IP address.

• NAS-Identifier: If this attribute is present, its value should match to the nas-identifier generated for the subscriber session.

To identify the subscriber session, use any one of the following attributes.

• If 3GPP2 service is configured the following attribute is used for correlation identifier:
  
  • 3GPP2-Correlation-ID: The values should exactly match the 3GPP2-correlation-id of the subscriber session. This is one of the preferred methods of subscriber session identification.

• If 3GPP service is configured the following attributes are used for different identifiers:
  
  • 3GPP-IMSI: International Mobile Subscriber Identification (IMSI) number should be validated and matched with the specified IMSI for specific PDP context.

  • 3GPP-NSAPI: Network Service Access Point Identifier (NSAPI) should match to the NSAPI specified for specific PDP context.

• User-Name: The value should exactly match the subscriber name of the session. This is one of the preferred methods of subscriber session identification.

• Framed-IP-Address: The values should exactly match the framed IP address of the session.

• Calling-station-id: The value should match the Mobile Station ID.

To specify the ACL to apply to the subscriber session, use the following attribute:

• Filter-ID: CoA only. This must be the name of an existing Access Control List. If this is present in a CoA request, the specified ACL is immediately applied to the specified subscriber session. The Context Configuration mode command, `radius attribute filter-id direction`, controls in which direction filters are applied.
The following attributes are also supported:

- Event-Timestamp: This attribute is a timestamp of when the event being logged occurred.
- If 3GPP2 service is configured following additional attributes are supported:
  - 3GPP2-Disconnect-Reason: This attribute indicates the reason for disconnecting the user. This attribute may be present in the RADIUS Disconnect-request Message from the Home Radius server to the PDSN.
  - 3GPP2-Session-Termination-Capability: When CoA and DM are enabled by issuing the radius change-authorize-nas-ip command, this attribute is included in a RADIUS Access-request message to the Home RADIUS server and contains the value 3 to indicate that the system supports both Dynamic authorization with RADIUS and Registration Revocation for Mobile IPv4. The attribute is also included in the RADIUS Access-Accept message and contains the preferred resource management mechanism by the home network, which is used for the session and may include values 1 through 3.

CoA and DM Error-Cause Attribute

The Error-Cause attribute is used to convey the results of requests to the system. This attribute is present when a CoA or DM NAK or ACK message is sent back to the RADIUS server.

The value classes of error causes are as follows:

- 0-199, 300-399 reserved
- 200-299 - successful completion
- 400-499 - errors in RADIUS server
- 500-599 - errors in NAS/Proxy

The following error cause is sent in ACK messages upon successful completion of a CoA or DM request:

- 201- Residual Session Context Removed

The following error causes are sent in NAK messages when a CoA or DM request fails:

- 401 - Unsupported Attribute
- 402 - Missing Attribute
- 403 - NAS Identification Mismatch
- 404 - Invalid Request
- 405 - Unsupported Service
- 406 - Unsupported Extension
- 501 - Administratively Prohibited
- 503 - Session Context Not Found
- 504 - Session Context Not Removable
- 506 - Resources Unavailable
Viewing CoA and DM Statistics

View CoA and DM message statistics by entering the following command:

```
show sessionsubsystem facility aaamgr
```

The following is a sample output of this command.

```
1 AAA Managers
807 Total aaa requests
  0 Total aaa auth requests
  0 Total aaa auth probes
  0 Total aaa auth keepalive
379 Total aaa auth requests
  0 Total aaa auth keepalive
0 Total aaa acct requests
  0 Total aaa acct keepalive
426 Total aaa acct requests
  0 Total aaa acct keepalive
379 Total aaa auth success
  0 Total aaa auth purged
  0 Total auth keepalive success
  0 Total auth keepalive purged
0 Total aaa auth DMU challenged
367 Total radius auth requests
  2 Total radius auth requests retried
  0 Total radius auth responses dropped
12 Total local auth requests
  0 Total local auth auth requests
  0 Total null-username auth requests (rejected)
  0 Total aaa acct completed
  0 Total acct keepalive success
  0 Total acct keepalive purged
0 Total aaa acct cancelled
426 Total radius acct requests
  0 Total radius acct requests retried
  0 Total radius acct responses dropped
  0 Total gtpp acct requests
  0 Total gtpp acct cancelled
  0 Total null acct requests
54 Total aaa acct sessions
  3 Total aaa acct archived
  0 Current recovery archives
  0 Current valid recovery records
  2 Total aaa sockets opened
  0 Total aaa requests pend socket open
  0 Current aaa requests pend socket open
  0 Current radius requests pend server max-outstanding
  0 Current radius requests pend server max-outstanding
  0 Total aaa radius coa requests
  0 Total aaa radius coa acks
  2 Total aaa radius coa naks
  2 Total radius charg auth
  0 Total radius charg auth succ
  0 Total radius charg auth fail
  0 Total radius charg auth cancel
  0 Total radius charg acct
  0 Total radius charg acct succ
  0 Total radius charg acct cancel
357 Total gtpp charg
357 Total gtpp charg success
  0 Total gtpp charg cancel
  0 Total prepaid online requests
  0 Total prepaid online success
  0 Total prepaid online retried
  0 Total prepaid online failure
  0 Total prepaid online purged
  0 Total aaamgr purged requests
0 SGSN: Total db records
0 SGSN: Total sub db records
0 SGSN: Total mm records
0 SGSN: Total pdp records
0 SGSN: Total auth records
```

CoA, RADIUS DM, and Session Redirection (Hotlining)

Enabling CoA and DM
Session Redirection (Hotlining)

Important
Functionality described for this feature in this segment is not applicable for HNB-GW sessions.

Overview

Session redirection provides a means to redirect subscriber traffic to an external server by applying ACL rules to the traffic of an existing or a new subscriber session. The destination address and optionally the destination port of TCP/IP or UDP/IP packets from the subscriber are rewritten so the packet is forwarded to the designated redirected address. Return traffic to the subscriber has the source address and port rewritten to the original values. The redirect ACL may be applied dynamically by means of the RADIUS Change of Authorization (CoA) feature.

Note that the session redirection feature is only intended to redirect a very small subset of subscribers at any given time. The data structures allocated for this feature are kept to the minimum to avoid large memory overhead in the session managers.

License Requirements

The Session Redirection (Hotlining) is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Operation

ACL Rule

An ACL rule named readdress server supports redirection of subscriber sessions. The ACL containing this rule must be configured in the destination context of the user. Only TCP and UDP protocol packets are supported. The ACL rule allows specifying the redirected address and an optional port. The source and destination address and ports (with respect to the traffic originating from the subscriber) may be wildcarded. If the redirected port is not specified, the traffic will be redirected to the same port as the original destination port in the datagrams. For detailed information on configuring ACLs, refer to the IP Access Control Lists chapter in the System Administration Guide. For more information on readdress server, refer to the ACL Configuration Mode Commands chapter of the Command Line Interface Reference.

Redirecting Subscriber Sessions

An ACL with the readdress server rule is applied to an existing subscriber session through CoA messages from the RADIUS server. The CoA message contains the 3GPP2-Correlation-ID, User-Name, Acct-Session-ID, or Framed-IP-Address attributes to identify the subscriber session. The CoA message also contains the Filter-Id attribute which specifies the name of the ACL with the readdress server rule. This enables applying the ACL
dynamically to existing subscriber sessions. By default, the ACL is applied as both the input and output filter for the matching subscriber unless the Filter-Id in the CoA message bears the prefix `in:` or `out:`.

For information on CoA messages and how they are implemented in the system, refer to RADIUS Change of Authorization and Disconnect Message, on page 31.

---

**Important** Changing ACL and rulebase together in a single CoA is not supported. For this, two separate CoA requests can be sent through AAA server requesting for one attribute change per request.

---

**Session Limits On Redirection**

To limit the amount of memory consumed by a session manager a limit of 2000 redirected session entries per session manager is allocated. This limit is equally shared by the set of subscribers who are currently being redirected. Whenever a redirected session entry is subject to revocation from a subscriber due to an insufficient number of available session entries, the least recently used entry is revoked.

**Stopping Redirection**

The redirected session entries for a subscriber remain active until a CoA message issued from the RADIUS server specifies a filter that does not contain the readdress server ACL rule. When this happens, the redirected session entries for the subscriber are deleted.

All redirected session entries are also deleted when the subscriber disconnects.

**Handling IP Fragments**

Since TCP/UDP port numbers are part of the redirection mechanism, fragmented IP datagrams must be reassembled before being redirected. Reassembly is particularly necessary when fragments are sent out of order. The session manager performs reassembly of datagrams and reassembly is attempted only when a datagram matches the redirect server ACL rule. To limit memory usage, only up to 10 different datagrams may be concurrently reassembled for a subscriber. Any additional requests cause the oldest datagram being reassembled to be discarded. The reassembly timeout is set to 2 seconds. In addition, the limit on the total number of fragments being reassembled by a session manager is set to 1000. If this limit is reached, the oldest datagram being reassembled in the session manager and its fragment list are discarded. These limits are not configurable.

**Recovery**

When a session manager dies, the ACL rules are recovered. The session redirect entries have to be re-created when the MN initiates new traffic for the session. Therefore when a crash occurs, traffic from the Internet side is not redirected to the MN.

**AAA Accounting**

Where destination-based accounting is implemented, traffic from the subscriber is accounted for using the original destination address and not the redirected address.
Viewing the Redirected Session Entries for a Subscriber

View the redirected session entries for a subscriber by entering the following command:

```
show subscribers debug-info { callid <id> | msid <id> | username <name> }
```

The following command displays debug information for a subscriber with the MSID 0000012345:

```
show subscribers debug-info msid 0000012345
```

The following is a sample output of this command:

```
username: user1 callid: 01callb1 msid: 0000100003
Card/Cpu: 4/2
Sessmgr Instance: 7
Primary callline:
Redundancy Status: Original Session
Checkpoints Attempts Success Last-Attempt Last-Success
Full: 27 26 15700ms 15700ms
Micro: 76 76 4200ms 4200ms
Current state: SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED
FSM Event trace:
State Event
SMGR_STATE_OPEN SMGR_EVT_NEWCALL
SMGR_STATE_NEWCALL_ARRIVED SMGR_EVT_ANSWER_CALL
SMGR_STATE_NEWCALL_ANSWERED SMGR_EVT_LINE_CONNECTED
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_LINK_CONTROL_UP
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_AUTH_REQ
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_IPADDR_ALLOC_SUCCESS
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_UPDATE_SESS_CONFIG
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_LOWER_LAYER_UP
Current state: SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED
FSM Event trace:
State Event
SMGR_STATE_OPEN SMGR_EVT_MAKECALL
SMGR_STATE_MAKECALL_PENDING SMGR_EVT_LINE_CONNECTED
SMGR_STATE_LINE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_LOWER_LAYER_UP
SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_AUTH_REQ
SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_AUTH_SUCCESS
SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_REQ_SUB_SESSION
SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_RSP_SUB_SESSION
SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED SMGR_EVT_REQ_RATE
username: user1 callid: 01callb1 msid: 0000100003
Card/Cpu: 4/2
Sessmgr Instance: 7
Primary callline:
Redundancy Status: Original Session
Checkpoints Attempts Success Last-Attempt Last-Success
Full: 27 26 15700ms 15700ms
Micro: 76 76 4200ms 4200ms
Current state: SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED
FSM Event trace:
State Event
```
### Data Reorder statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total timer expiry</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (tmr expiry)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total no buffers</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (no buffers)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (queue full)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (out of range)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (svc change)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total out-of-seq pkt drop</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IPv4 Reassembly Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Success</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Progress</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (timeout)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (no buffers)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (other reasons)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Redirected Session Entries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Added</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleted</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoked for use by different subscriber</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Peer callline

- Redundancy Status: Original Session

### Checkpoints

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Full</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Micro</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Current state

**State:** SMGR_STATE_CONNECTED

**Event:**

- SMGR_EVT_MAKECALL
- SMGR_EVT.Line_CONNECTED
- SMGR_EVT_AUTH_REQ
- SMGR_EVT_AUTH_SUCCESS
- SMGR_EVT_REQ_SUB_SESSION
- SMGR_EVT_RSP_SUB_SESSION
- SMGR_EVT_ADD_SUB_SESSION
- SMGR_EVT_AUTH_REQ
- SMGR_EVT_AUTH_SUCCESS

### Data Reorder statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total timer expiry</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (tmr expiry)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total no buffers</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (no buffers)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (queue full)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (out of range)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total flush (svc change)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total out-of-seq pkt drop</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IPv4 Reassembly Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Success</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Progress</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (timeout)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (no buffers)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure (other reasons)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Redirected Session Entries

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Allowed</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Added</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deleted</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Revoked for use by different subscriber</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gx Interface Support

This chapter provides information on configuring Gx interface to support policy and charging control for subscribers.

The IMS service provides application support for transport of voice, video, and data independent of access support. Roaming IMS subscribers require apart from other functionality sufficient, uninterrupted, consistent, and seamless user experience during an application session. It is also important that a subscriber gets charged only for the resources consumed by the particular IMS application used.

It is recommended that before using the procedures in this chapter you select the configuration example that best meets your service model, and configure the required elements for that model as described in this Administration Guide.

The following topics are covered in this chapter:

- Rel. 7 Gx Interface, page 41
- Rel. 8 Gx Interface, page 68
- Rel. 9 Gx Interface, page 91
- Rel. 10 Gx Interface, page 97
- Supported Gx Features, page 105

Rel. 7 Gx Interface

Rel. 7 Gx interface support is available on the Cisco ASR chassis running StarOS 8.1 or StarOS 9.0 and later releases for the following products:

- GGSN
- IPSG

This section describes the following topics:

- Introduction, on page 42
- Terminology and Definitions, on page 45
- How Rel. 7 Gx Works, on page 59
Introduction

For IMS deployment in GPRS/UMTS networks the system uses Rel. 7 Gx interface for policy-based admission control support and flow-based charging. The Rel. 7 Gx interface supports enforcing policy control features like gating, bandwidth limiting, and so on, and also supports flow-based charging. This is accomplished via dynamically provisioned Policy Control and Charging (PCC) rules. These PCC rules are used to identify Service Data Flows (SDF) and do charging. Other parameters associated with the rules are used to enforce policy control.

The PCC architecture allows operators to perform service-based QoS policy, and flow-based charging control. In the PCC architecture, this is accomplished mainly by the Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF)/Cisco Systems GGSN and the Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF).

In GPRS/UMTS networks, the client functionality lies with the GGSN, therefore in the IMS authorization scenario it is also called the Gateway. In the following figure, Gateway is the Cisco Systems GGSN, and the PCEF function is provided by Enhanced Charging Service (ECS). The Rel 7. Gx interface is implemented as a Diameter connection. The Gx messages mostly involve installing/modifying/removing dynamic rules and activating/deactivating predefined rules.

The Rel. 7 Gx reference point is located between the Gateway and the PCRF. This reference point is used for provisioning and removal of PCC rules from the PCRF to the Gateway, and the transmission of traffic plane events from the Gateway to the PCRF. The Gx reference point can be used for charging control, policy control,
or both by applying AVPs relevant to the application. The following figure shows the reference points between various elements involved in the policy and charging architecture.

*Figure 8: PCC Logical Architecture*

Within the Gateway, the IMSA and DPCA modules handle the Gx protocol related functions (at the SessMgr) and the policy enforcement and charging happens at ECS. The Gy protocol related functions are handled
within the DCCA module (at the ECS). The following figure shows the interaction between components within the Gateway.

**Figure 9: PCC Architecture within Cisco PCEF**

**Supported Networks and Platforms**

This feature is supported on all chassis with StarOS Release 8.1 and later running GGSN service for the core network services.

**License Requirements**

The Rel. 7 Gx interface support is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the *Managing License Keys* section of the *Software Management Operations* chapter in the *System Administration Guide*.

**Supported Standards**

The Rel 7. Gx interface support is based on the following standards and RFCs:

- 3GPP TS 29.213 V7.4.0 (2008-03): 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; Policy and Charging Control signalling flows and QoS parameter mapping; (Release 7)
- RFC 3588, Diameter Base Protocol; September 2003
- RFC 4006, Diameter Credit-Control Application; August 2005
Terminology and Definitions

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to Rel. 7 Gx functionality.

Policy Control

The process whereby the PCRF indicates to the PCEF how to control the IP-CAN bearer.

Policy control comprises the following functions:

- **Binding:** Binding is the generation of an association between a Service Data Flow (SDF) and the IP CAN bearer (for GPRS a PDP context) transporting that SDF.

  The QoS demand in the PCC rule, as well as the SDF template are input for the bearer binding. The selected bearer will have the same QoS Class as the one indicated by the PCC rule.

  Depending on the type of IP-CAN and bearer control mode, bearer binding can be executed either by the PCRF, or both PCRF and PCEF.

    - For UE-only IP-CAN bearer establishment mode, the PCRF performs bearer binding. When the PCRF performs bearer binding, it indicates the bearer (PDP context) by means of Bearer ID. The Bearer ID uniquely identifies the bearer within the PDP session.

    - For UE/NW IP-CAN bearer establishment mode, the PCRF performs the binding of the PCC rules for user controlled services, while the PCEF performs the binding of the PCC rules for the network-controlled services.

  Prior to Release 16.0, the rule binding was getting rejected. In 16.0 and later releases, the binding of PCEF rules will be successful when BCM mode is set to UE-only for EPS IP-CAN bearer without "bearer-ID" in the PCRF messages such as RAR or CCA-U.

  In the 3G to 4G handover scenario, rule binding and rule removal will be successful in UE-only mode and any filter (and related info) changes because of this modification/installation/removal will not be notified to UE as updates in UE only mode cannot be sent to UE. These rules are only considered for charging and the expectation is that the same rules are again modified in 4G (if handover is done) so that the filters (and related info) can be notified to UE.

  In releases prior to 18, P-GW/GGSN does not send CCR-U with Charging Rule report for rule binding failure occurred during 4G to 3G HO in a collision case where create/update bearer response in 3G/4G is pending and update bearer of 3G HO is received. In 18 and later releases, CCR-U is generated and sent to PCRF for reporting rule failure when the collision happens during GnGp HO scenario.

  This additional Gx message (CCR-U) triggered will require multiple CCR-U's to be configured when RAT_TYPE trigger is enabled. Otherwise, the subscriber call will be dropped whenever the collision happens during HO.

- **Gating Control:** Gating control is the blocking or allowing of packets, belonging to an SDF, to pass through to the desired endpoint. A gate is described within a PCC rule and gating control is applied on a per SDF basis. The commands to open or close the gate leads to the enabling or disabling of the passage for corresponding IP packets. If the gate is closed, all packets of the related IP flows are dropped. If the gate is opened, the packets of the related IP flows are allowed to be forwarded.

- **Event Reporting:** Event reporting is the notification of and reaction to application events to trigger new behavior in the user plane as well as the reporting of events related to the resources in the Gateway (PCEF).
Event triggers may be used to determine which IP-CAN session modification or specific event causes the PCEF to re-request PCC rules. Although event trigger reporting from PCEF to PCRF can apply for an IP CAN session or bearer depending on the particular event, provisioning of event triggers will be done at session level.

Note that in 11.0 and later releases, RAR with unknown event triggers are silently ignored and responded with DIAMETER_SUCCESS. In earlier releases, when unknown event triggers were received in the RAR command from PCRF, invalid AVP result code was set in the RAA command.

The Event Reporting Function (ERF) receives event triggers from PCRF during the Provision of PCC Rules procedure and performs event trigger detection. When an event matching the received event trigger occurs, the ERF reports the occurred event to the PCRF. If the provided event triggers are associated with certain parameter values then the ERF includes those values in the response back to the PCRF. The Event Reporting Function is located in the PCEF.

In StarOS releases prior to 14.0, SUCCESSFULRESOURCE_ALLOCATION (22) event trigger was sent for rules irrespective of successful installation. In 14.0 and later releases, SUCCESSFULRESOURCE_ALLOCATION (22) event trigger will be sent under the following conditions:

- When a rule is installed successfully (and the event trigger is armed by PCRF and resource-allocation-notification is enabled).
- On partial failure, i.e., when two or more rules are installed and at least one of the rules were successfully installed. (and the event trigger is armed by PCRF and resource-allocation-notification is enabled).

On complete failure, i.e., none of the rules were installed, the event-trigger SUCCESSFULRESOURCE_ALLOCATION (22) will not be sent.

Important
In this release, event triggers "IP-CAN_CHANGE" and "MAX_NR_BEARERS_REACHED" are not supported.

**QoS Control:** QoS control is the authorization and enforcement of the maximum QoS that is authorized for a SDF or an IP-CAN bearer or a QoS Class Identifier (QCI). In case of an aggregation of multiple SDFs (for GPRS a PDP context), the combination of the authorized QoS information of the individual SDFs is provided as the authorized QoS for this aggregate.

- QoS control per SDF allows the PCC architecture to provide the PCEF with the authorized QoS to be enforced for each specific SDF.

- The enforcement of the authorized QoS of the IP-CAN bearer may lead to a downgrading or upgrading of the requested bearer QoS by the Gateway (PCEF) as part of a UE-initiated IP-CAN bearer establishment or modification. Alternatively, the enforcement of the authorized QoS may, depending on operator policy and network capabilities, lead to network-initiated IP-CAN bearer establishment or modification. If the PCRF provides authorized QoS for both, the IP-CAN bearer and PCC rule(s), the enforcement of authorized QoS of the individual PCC rules takes place first.

- QoS authorization information may be dynamically provisioned by the PCRF, or it can be a predefined PCC rule in the PCEF. In case the PCRF provides PCC rules dynamically, authorized QoS information for the IP-CAN bearer (combined QoS) may be provided. For a predefined PCC rule within the PCEF, the authorized QoS information takes affect when the PCC rule is activated. The PCEF combines the different sets of authorized QoS information, that is the information
received from the PCRF and the information corresponding to the predefined PCC rules. The PCRF knows the authorized QoS information of the predefined PCC rules and takes this information into account when activating them. This ensures that the combined authorized QoS of a set of PCC rules that are activated by the PCRF is within the limitations given by the subscription and operator policies regardless of whether these PCC rules are dynamically provided, predefined, or both.

**Important** In this release, QoS Resource Reservation is not supported.

**Supported Features:**

- **Provisioning and Policy Enforcement of Authorized QoS:** The PCRF may provide authorized QoS to the PCEF. The authorized QoS provides appropriate values for resources to be enforced.

- **Provisioning of "Authorized QoS" Per IP CAN Bearer:** The authorized QoS per IP-CAN bearer is used if the bearer binding is performed by the PCRF.

- **Policy Enforcement for "Authorized QoS" per IP CAN Bearer:** The PCEF is responsible for enforcing the policy-based authorization, that is to ensure that the requested QoS is in-line with the "Authorized QoS" per IP CAN Bearer.

- **Policy Provisioning for Authorized QoS Per SDF:** The provisioning of authorized QoS per SDF is a part of PCC rule provisioning procedure.
  - **Policy Enforcement for Authorized QoS Per SDF:** If an authorized QoS is defined for a PCC rule, the PCEF limits the data rate of the SDF corresponding to that PCC rule not to exceed the maximum authorized bandwidth for the PCC rule by discarding packets exceeding the limit.
  - **Upon deactivation or removal of a PCC rule, the PCEF frees the resources reserved for that PCC rule. If the PCRF provides authorized QoS for both the IP-CAN bearer and PCC rule(s), the enforcement of authorized QoS of the individual PCC rules takes place first.

**Important** In this release, coordination of authorized QoS scopes in mixed mode (BCM = UE_NW) is not supported.

- **Provisioning of Authorized QoS Per QCI:** If the PCEF performs the bearer binding, the PCRF may provision an authorized QoS per QCI for non-GBR bearer QCI values. If the PCRF performs the bearer binding the PCRF does not provision an authorized QoS per QCI. The PCRF does not provision an authorized QoS per QCI for GBR bearer QCI values.

**Important** Only standards-based QCI values of 1 through 9 are supported. QCI values 1 through 9 are defined in 3GPP Specification TS 23.203 "Policy and charging control architecture".

- **Policy Enforcement for Authorized QoS per QCI:** The PCEF can receive an authorized QoS per QCI for non GBR-bearer QCI values.

- **Other Features:**
Bearer Control Mode Selection: The PCEF may indicate, via the Gx reference point, a request for Bearer Control Mode (BCM) selection at IP-CAN session establishment or IP-CAN session modification (as a consequence of an SGSN change). It will be done using the "PCC Rule Request" procedure.

If the Bearer-Control-Mode AVP is not received from PCRF, the IP-CAN session is not terminated. The value negotiated between UE/SGSN/GGSN is considered as the BCM. The following values are considered for each of the service types:

- **GGSN**: The negotiated value between UE/SGSN/GGSN is considered.

In the following scenarios UE ONLY is chosen as the BCM:

**Scenario 1:**
- UE -> UE ONLY
- SGSN -> UE ONLY
- GGSN -> UE ONLY
- PCRF -> NO BCM

**Scenario 2:**
- UE -> UE ONLY
- SGSN -> UE ONLY
- GGSN -> Mixed
- PCRF -> NO BCM

- **GTP-PGW**: BCM of UE_NW is considered.
- **IPSG**: BCM of UE ONLY is considered.
- **HSGW/SGW/PDIF/FA/PDSN/HA/MIPV6HA**: BCM of NONE is considered.

PCC Rule Error Handling: If the installation/activation of one or more PCC rules fails, the PCEF includes one or more Charging-Rule-Report AVP(s) in either a CCR or an RAA command for the affected PCC rules. Within each Charging-Rule-Report AVP, the PCEF identifies the failed PCC rule(s) by including the Charging-Rule-Name AVP(s) or Charging-Rule-Base-Name AVP(s), identifies the failed reason code by including a Rule-Failure-Code AVP, and includes the PCC-Rule-Status AVP.

If the installation/activation of one or more new PCC rules (that is, rules that were not previously successfully installed) fails, the PCEF sets the PCC-Rule-Status to INACTIVE for both the PUSH and the PULL modes.

If a PCC rule was successfully installed/activated, but can no longer be enforced by the PCEF, the PCEF sends the PCRF a new CCR command and include a Charging-Rule-Report AVP. The PCEF includes the Rule-Failure-Code AVP within the Charging-Rule-Report AVP and sets the PCC-Rule-Status to INACTIVE.

In releases prior to 18, P-GW/GGSN does not send CCR-U with Charging Rule report for rule binding failure occurred during 4G to 3G HO in a collision case where create/update bearer response in 3G/4G is pending and update bearer of 3G HO is received. In 18 and later releases, CCR-U is
generated and sent to PCRF for reporting rule failure when the collision happens during GnGp HO scenario.

This additional Gx message (CCR-U) triggered will require multiple CCR-U to be configured when RAT_TYPE trigger is enabled. Otherwise, the subscriber call will be dropped whenever the collision happens during HO.

Time of the Day Procedures: PCEF performs PCC rule request as instructed by the PCRF. Revalidation-Time when set by the PCRF, causes the PCEF to trigger a PCRF interaction to request PCC rules from the PCRF for an established IP CAN session. The PCEF stops the timer once the PCEF triggers a REVALIDATION_TIMEOUT event.

In 11.0 and later releases, Rule-Activation-Time / Rule-Deactivation-Time / Revalidation-Time AVP is successfully parsed only if its value corresponds to current time or a later time than the current IPSG time, else the AVP and entire message is rejected. In earlier releases the AVP is successfully parsed only if its value corresponds to a later time than the current IPSG time, else the AVP and entire message is rejected.

In releases prior to 17.0, if "Rule-Deactivation-Time" AVP for a predefined rule was omitted in a CCA-U or RAR message, then any previous value for this AVP was continued to be used in the chassis. In 17.0 and later releases, if Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP is omitted in CCA/RAR, then any previous value for this AVP is no longer valid. The new behavior is compliant to the 3GPP specification for Gx, version 12.1.0.

If PCRF enables the same predefined rule again in RAR/CCA-U without Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP, then the deactivation-time for this rule, if any, will be removed.

For switching to the old behavior, PCRF should re-send the same value of Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP along with predef-rule name in the PCRF message (RAR, CCA-U).

Support for Firewall Policy on Gx: The Diameter AVP "SN-Firewall-Policy" has been added to the Diameter dynamic dictionary to support Firewall policy on Gx interface. This AVP can be encoded in CCA-I message to apply/overwrite the fw-and-nat policy that has either been statically assigned to the PDP context via APN configuration or dynamically assigned via RADIUS in Access-Accept. This AVP can also parsed in any CCA-U or RAR message to modify the fw-and-nat policy that is currently assigned to the PDP context.

**Charging Control**

Charging Control is the process of associating packets belonging to a SDF to a charging key, and applying online charging and/or offline charging, as appropriate. Flow-based charging handles differentiated charging of the bearer usage based on real time analysis of the SDFs. In order to allow for charging control, the information in the PCC rule identifies the SDF and specifies the parameters for charging control. The PCC rule information may depend on subscription data.

In the case of online charging, it is possible to apply an online charging action upon PCEF events (for example, re-authorization upon QoS change).

It is possible to indicate to the PCEF that interactions with the charging systems are not required for a PCC rule, that is to perform neither accounting nor credit control for this SDF, and then no offline charging information is generated.
Supported Features:

- Provisioning of Charging-related Information for the IP-CAN Session.
- Provisioning of Charging Addresses: Primary or secondary event charging function name (Online Charging Server (OCS) addresses or the peer names).

**Important**

In this release, provisioning of primary or secondary charging collection function name (Offline Charging Server (OFCS) addresses) over Gx is not supported.

- Provisioning of Default Charging Method: In this release, the default charging method is sent in CCR-I message. For this, new AVPs Online/Offline are sent in CCR-I message based on the configuration. The Online/Offline AVPs received at command level applies only to dynamic rules if they are not configured at PCC rule level.

Charging Correlation

For the purpose of charging correlation between SDF level and application level (for example, IMS) as well as on-line charging support at the application level, applicable charging identifiers and IP-CAN type identifiers are passed from the PCRF to the AF, if such identifiers are available.

For IMS bearer charging, the IP Multimedia Core Network (IM CN) subsystem and the Packet Switched (PS) domain entities are required to generate correlated charging data.

In order to achieve this, the Gateway provides the GGSN Charging Identifier (GCID) associated with the PDP context along with its address to the PCRF. The PCRF in turn sends the IMS Charging Identifier (ICID), which is provided by the P-CSCF, to the Gateway. The Gateway generates the charging records including the GCID as well as the ICID if received from PCRF, so that the correlation of charging data can be done with the billing system.

PCRF also provides the flow identifier, which uniquely identifies an IP flow in an IMS session.

Policy and Charging Control (PCC) Rules

A PCC rule enables the detection of an SDF and provides parameters for policy control and/or charging control. The purpose of the PCC rule is to:

- Detect a packet belonging to an SDF.
  - Select downlink IP CAN bearers based on SDF filters in the PCC rule.
  - Enforce uplink IP flows are transported in the correct IP CAN bearer using the SDF filters within the PCC rule.
- Identify the service that the SDF contributes to.
- Provide applicable charging parameters for an SDF.
- Provide policy control for an SDF.

The PCEF selects a PCC rule for each packet received by evaluating received packets against SDF filters of PCC rules in the order of precedence of the PCC rules. When a packet matches a SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied.
There are two types of PCC rules:

- **Dynamic PCC Rules**: Rules dynamically provisioned by the PCRF to the PCEF via the Gx interface. These PCC rules may be either predefined or dynamically generated in the PCRF. Dynamic PCC rules can be installed, modified, and removed at any time.

- **Predefined PCC Rule**: Rules preconfigured in the PCEF by the operators. Predefined PCC rules can be activated or deactivated by the PCRF at any time. Predefined PCC rules within the PCEF may be grouped allowing the PCRF to dynamically activate a set of PCC rules over the Gx reference point.

A third type of rule, the static PCC rule can be preconfigured in the chassis by the operators. Static PCC rules are not explicitly known in the PCRF, and are not under control of the PCRF. Static PCC rules are bound to general purpose bearer with no Gx control.

A PCC rule consists of:

- **Rule Name**: The rule name is used to reference a PCC rule in the communication between the PCEF and PCRF.

- **Service Identifier**: The service identifier is used to identify the service or the service component the SDF relates to.

- **Service Data Flow Filter(s)**: The service flow filter(s) is used to select the traffic for which the rule applies.

- **Precedence**: For different PCC rules with overlapping SDF filter, the precedence of the rule determines which of these rules is applicable. When a dynamic PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same priority, the dynamic PCC rule takes precedence.

- **Gate Status**: The gate status indicates whether the SDF, detected by the SDF filter(s), may pass (gate is open) or will be discarded (gate is closed) in uplink and/or in downlink direction.

- **QoS Parameters**: The QoS information includes the QoS class identifier (authorized QoS class for the SDF), the Allocation and Retention Priority (ARP), and authorized bitrates for uplink and downlink.

**Important**

In earlier releases, ECS used only the Priority-Level part of ARP byte for bearer binding, (along with QCI). Now the entire ARP byte is used for bearer binding (along with QCI). Since the capability and vulnerability bits are optional in a dynamic rule, if a dynamic rule is received without these flags, it is assumed that the capability bit is set to 1 (disabled) and vulnerability bit is set to 0 (enabled). For predefined rules, currently configuring these two flags is not supported, so as of now all predefined rules are assumed to have capability bit set to 1 (disabled) and vulnerability bit set to 0 (enabled).

- **Charging key (rating group)**

- **Other charging parameters**: The charging parameters define whether online and offline charging interfaces are used, what is to be metered in offline charging, on what level the PCEF will report the usage related to the rule, and so on.
In this release, configuring the Metering Method and Reporting Level for dynamic PCC rules is not supported.

PCC rules also include Application Function (AF) record information for enabling charging correlation between the application and bearer layer if the AF has provided this information via the Rx interface. For IMS, this includes the IMS Charging Identifier (ICID) and flow identifiers.

Important

ASR5K supports only eight flow information including the flow description per dynamic charging rule in a Gx message.

In releases prior to 14.0, there were only 10 PCC rules that were recovered per bearer in the event of a session manager crash. In 14.0 and later releases, this limit has been increased to 24. That is, up to 24 PCC rules can be recovered post ICSR.

With the increase in the limit of PCC rules that can be recovered, the rules are not lost and hence the charging applied to the end users are not impacted.

In releases prior to 17.0, when P-GW received PCC rules from PCRF and it results in Create Bearer or Update Bearer to be triggered towards MME/S-GW, the PCC rules were kept in a pending-active state. Any modification request that was received for these pending-active rules were not currently honored by the P-GW. In 17.0 and later releases, when modification for the PCC rules in pending-active state is received, the modified parameters will be buffered at P-GW. After the response for the pending request is received from the access network, P-GW will process the modification of the buffered parameters and if required generate another update towards network.

PCC Procedures over Gx Reference Point

Request for PCC Rules

The PCEF, via the Gx reference point, requests for PCC rules in the following instances:

- At IP-CAN session establishment
- At IP-CAN session modification

PCC rules can also be requested as a consequence of a failure in the PCC rule installation/activation or enforcement without requiring an event trigger.

Provisioning of PCC Rules

The PCRF indicates, via the Rel. 8 Gx reference point, the PCC rules to be applied at the PCEF. This may be using one of the following procedures:

- PULL (provisioning solicited by the PCEF): In response to a request for PCC rules being made by the PCEF, the PCRF provisions PCC rules in the CC-Answer.
- PUSH (unsolicited provisioning): The PCRF may decide to provision PCC rules without obtaining a request from the PCEF. For example, in response to information provided to the PCRF via the Rx reference point, or in response to an internal trigger within the PCRF. To provision PCC rules without
a request from the PCEF, the PCRF includes these PCC rules in an RA-Request message. No CCR/CCA messages are triggered by this RA-Request.

For each request from the PCEF or upon unsolicited provisioning, the PCRF provisions zero or more PCC rules. The PCRF may perform an operation on a single PCC rule by one of the following means:

- To activate or deactivate a PCC rule that is predefined at the PCEF, the PCRF provisions a reference to this PCC rule within a Charging-Rule-Name AVP and indicates the required action by choosing either the Charging-Rule-Install AVP or the Charging-Rule-Remove AVP.
- To install or modify a PCRF-provisioned PCC rule, the PCRF provisions a corresponding Charging-Rule-Definition AVP within a Charging-Rule-Install AVP.
- To remove a PCC rule which has previously been provisioned by the PCRF, the PCRF provisions the name of this rule as value of a Charging-Rule-Name AVP within a Charging-Rule-Remove AVP.

**Important**

In 11.0 and later releases, the maximum valid length for a charging rule name is 63 bytes. When the length of the charging rule name is greater than 63 bytes, a charging rule report with RESOURCES_LIMITATION as Rule-Failure-Code is sent. This charging rule report is sent only when the length of the rule name is lesser than 128 characters. When the charging rule name length is greater than or equal to 128 characters no charging rule report will be sent. In earlier releases, the length of the charging rule name constructed by PCRF was limited to 32 bytes.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCRF has subscribed to Out of Credit trigger, on session connect when one rule validation fails and also when an Out of Credit was received from OCS for another rule, P-GW was trying to report these failures in different CCR-U to PCRF. However, the second CCR-U of Out of credit was getting dropped internally.

In 14.0 and later releases, on session connect, P-GW combines the rule failure and out of credit in the same CCR-U and sends to PCRF.

**Selecting a PCC Rule for Uplink IP Packets**

If PCC is enabled, the PCEF selects the applicable PCC rule for each received uplink IP packet within an IP CAN bearer by evaluating the packet against uplink SDF filters of PCRF-provided or predefined active PCC rules of this IP CAN bearer in the order of the precedence of the PCC rules.

**Important**

When a PCRF-provided PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same precedence, the uplink SDF filters of the PCRF-provided PCC rule is applied first.

**Important**

In 11.0 and later releases, IMSA and ECS allow the PCRF to install two (or more) dynamic rules with the same precedence value. In earlier releases, for two distinct dynamic rules having the same precedence the second rule used to be rejected.

When a packet matches an SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied. Uplink IP packets which do not match any PCC rule of the corresponding IP CAN bearer are discarded.
Selecting a PCC Rule and IP CAN Bearer for Downlink IP Packets

If PCC is enabled, the PCEF selects a PCC rule for each received downlink IP packet within an IP CAN session by evaluating the packet against downlink SDF filters of PCRF-provided or predefined active PCC rules of all IP CAN bearers of the IP CAN session in the order of the precedence of the PCC rules.

Important

When a PCRF-provided PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same precedence, the downlink SDF filters of the PCRF-provided PCC rule are applied first.

When a packet matches a SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied. The Downlink IP Packet is transported within the IP CAN bearer where the selected PCC rule is mapped. Downlink IP packets that do not match any PCC rule of the IP CAN session are discarded.

The following procedures are also supported:

- Indication of IP-CAN Bearer Termination Implications
- Indication of IP-CAN Session Termination: When the IP-CAN session is being terminated (for example, for GPRS when the last PDP Context within the IP-CAN session is being terminated) the PCEF contacts the PCRF.
- Request of IP-CAN Bearer Termination: If the termination of the last IP CAN bearer within an IP CAN session is requested, the PCRF and PCEF apply the "Request of IP-CAN Session Termination" procedure.
- Request of IP-CAN Session Termination: If the PCRF decides to terminate an IP CAN session due to an internal trigger or trigger from the SPR, the PCRF informs the PCEF. The PCEF acknowledges to the PCRF and instantly removes/deactivates all the PCC rules that have been previously installed or activated on that IP-CAN session.

The PCEF applies IP CAN specific procedures to terminate the IP CAN session. For GPRS, the GGSN send a PDP context deactivation request with the teardown indicator set to indicate that the termination of the entire IP-CAN session is requested. Furthermore, the PCEF applies the "Indication of IP CAN Session Termination" procedure.

In 12.0 and later releases, volume or rule information obtained from PCRF is discarded if the subscriber is going down.

Volume Reporting Over Gx

This section describes the 3GPP Rel. 9 Volume Reporting over Gx feature, which is supported by all products supporting Rel. 7 Gx interface.

License Requirements

The Volume Reporting over Gx is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.
In 12.0 and later releases, no separate license is required for Charging over Gx / Volume Reporting over Gx feature. This feature can be enabled as part of "Policy Interface" license.

**Supported Standards**

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature is based on the following standard:


**Feature Overview**

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature provides PCRF the capability to make real-time decisions based on the data usage by subscribers.

Volume Reporting over Gx is applicable only for volume quota.

In release 10.0, only total data usage reporting is supported, uplink/downlink level reporting is not supported. In 10.2 and later releases, it is supported.

The PCEF only reports the accumulated usage since the last report for usage monitoring and not from the beginning.

If the usage threshold is set to zero (infinite threshold), no further threshold events will be generated by PCEF, but monitoring of usage will continue and be reported at the end of the session.

In 12.2 and later releases, usage reporting on bearer termination is supported.

The following steps explain how Volume Reporting over Gx works:

1. PCEF after receiving the message from PCRF parses the usage monitoring related AVPs, and sends the information to IMSA.
2. IMSA updates the information to ECS.
3. Once the ECS is updated with the usage monitoring information from PCRF, the PCEF (ECS) starts tracking the data usage.
4. For session-level monitoring, the ECS maintains the amount of data usage.
5. For PCC rule monitoring, usage is monitored with the monitoring key as the unique identifier. Each node maintains the usage information per monitoring key. When the data traffic is passed, the usage is checked against the usage threshold values and reported as described in the Usage Reporting section.
6. The PCEF continues to track data usage after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.
Usage Monitoring

- **Usage Monitoring at Session Level:** PCRF subscribes to the session-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to SESSION_LEVEL(0). After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. In 11.0 and later releases, Monitoring Key at session level is supported.

In 12.0 and later releases, enabling and disabling session usage in a single message from PCRF is supported. This is supported only if the monitoring key is associated at session level.

In 12.0 and later releases, monitoring of usage based on input/output octet threshold levels is supported. Usage is reported based on the enabled threshold level. If multiple levels are enabled, usage will be reported on all the enabled levels even if only one of the levels is breached. Monitoring will be stopped on the missing threshold levels in the response for the usage report from PCRF (expected to provide the complete set again if PCRF wants to continue monitoring on the multiple levels enabled earlier).

Total threshold level along with UL/DL threshold level in the GSU AVP is treated as an error and only total threshold level is accepted.

In releases prior to 17.0, extra CCR-U was generated for a monitoring key when the following requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key.

- immediate reporting request with monitoring key at rule level
- immediate reporting request with or without monitoring key at session level
- explicit disable request at rule level
- explicit disable request at session level

In 17.0 and later releases, extra CCR-U is not generated for a monitoring key when all the above mentioned requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key. Also, extra CCR-U is not generated when immediate reporting request without monitoring key at rule level is received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for all the active monitoring keys.

- **Usage Monitoring at Flow Level:** PCRF subscribes to the flow-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to PCC_RULE_LEVEL(1). Monitoring Key is mandatory in case of a flow-level monitoring since the rules are associated with the monitoring key and enabling/disabling of usage monitoring at flow level can be controlled by PCRF using it. After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

Usage monitoring is supported for static, predefined rules, and dynamic rule definitions.

- **Usage Monitoring for Static Rules:** In the case of static rules, the usage reporting on last rule removal associated with the monitoring key is not applicable. In this case only the usage monitoring information is received from the PCRF.

- **Usage Monitoring for Predefined Rules:** If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for the predefined rules, PCRF sends the rule and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. The Monitoring key should be the same as the one pre-configured in PCEF for that predefined rule. There can be multiple rules associated with the same monitoring key. Hence enabling a particular monitoring key would result in the data being
tracked for multiple rules having the same monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

- Usage Monitoring for Dynamic Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for dynamic ruledefs, PCRF provides the monitoring key along with a charging rule definition and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. This would result in the usage monitoring being done for all the rules associated with that monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated, the usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. Monitoring key for dynamic ruledef is dynamically assigned by PCRF which is the only difference with predefined rules in case of usage monitoring.

In releases prior to 15.0, when threshold breach happens for multiple monitoring keys at the same time, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported and the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported in CCR-T (threshold set to infinity). On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS and reported only on session termination.

In 15.0 and later releases, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported first. Upon receiving successful response from PCRF, the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported to PCRF. On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS. Any future successful interaction with PCRF for the session will send unreported UMI to PCRF.

Usage Reporting

Usage at subscriber/flow level is reported to PCRF under the following conditions:

- Usage Threshold Reached: PCEF records the subscriber data usage and checks if the usage threshold provided by PCRF is reached. This is done for both session and rule level reporting.

For session-level reporting, the actual usage volume is compared with the usage volume threshold.

For rule-level reporting the rule that hits the data traffic is used to find out if the monitoring key is associated with it, and based on the monitoring key the data usage is checked. Once the condition is met, it reports the usage information to IMSA and continues monitoring. IMSA then triggers the CCR-U if "USAGE_REPORT" trigger is enabled by the PCRF. The Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP is sent in this CCR with the "Used-Service-Unit" set to the amount of data usage by subscriber.

If PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold in the usage monitoring information as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no usage status is reported.

In the non-standard Volume Reporting over Gx implementation, usage monitoring will be stopped once the threshold is breached, else the monitoring will continue. There will be no further usage reporting until the CCA is received.

- Usage Monitoring Disabled: If the PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring with Usage-Monitoring-Support AVP set to USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED, the PCEF stops monitoring and reports the usage information (when the monitoring was enabled) to PCRF if the usage monitoring is disabled by PCRF as a result of CCR from PCEF which is not related to reporting usage, other external triggers, or a PCRF internal trigger. If the PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no further usage status is reported.
IP CAN Session Termination: When the IP CAN session is terminated, the accumulated subscriber usage information is reported to PCRF in the CCR-T from PCEF. If PCC usage level information is enabled by PCRF, the PCC usage will also be reported.

PCRF uses RAR message and includes Session-Release-Cause AVP in it to initiate IP CAN Session Termination. However, there are some scenarios where PCRF may want to terminate the IP CAN Session in CCA messages. In order to avoid an unnecessary additional message, PCRF can inform P-GW to terminate the subscriber in CCA-U message itself. Hence, in 17.0 and later releases, the Session Release Cause has been added in CCA messages for all Gx dictionaries.

PCC Rule Removal: When the PCRF deactivates the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key, the PCEF sends a CCR with the data usage for that monitoring key. If the PCEF reports the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key is inactive, the PCEF reports the accumulated usage for that monitoring key within the same CCR command if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in a CCR command; otherwise, if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in an RAA command, the PCEF sends a new CCR command to report accumulated usage for the usage monitoring key. In 12.0 and later releases, usage reporting on last rule deactivation using rule deactivation time set by PCRF is supported.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCC rule was tried to be removed while waiting for access side update bearer response, the charging rules were not removed. In 14.0 and later releases, on receiving message from PCRF, the rule that is meant for removal is marked and then after the access side procedure is complete the rule is removed.

PCRFR Requested Usage Report: In 10.2 and later releases, the accumulated usage since the last report is sent even in case of immediate reporting, the usage is reset after immediate reporting and usage monitoring continued so that the subsequent usage report will have the usage since the current report. In earlier releases the behavior was to accumulate the so far usage in the next report.

Release 12.2 onwards, usage reporting on bearer termination can be added. When a bearer is deleted due to some reason, the rules associated with the bearer will also be removed. So, the usage will be reported on the monitoring key(s) whose associated rule is the last one that is removed because of bearer termination.

Revalidation Timeout: In the non-standard implementation, if usage monitoring and reporting is enabled and a revalidation timeout occurs, the PCEF sends a CCR to request PCC rules and reports all accumulated usage for all enabled monitoring keys since the last report (or since usage reporting was enabled if the usage was not yet reported) with the accumulated usage at IP-CAN session level (if enabled) and at service data flow level (if enabled) This is the default behavior.

In the case of standard implementation, this must be enabled by CLI configuration.

The Usage Reporting on Revalidation Timeout feature is available by default in non-standard implementation of Volume Reporting over Gx. In 10.2 and later releases, this is configurable in the standard implementation. This is not supported in 10.0 release for standard based volume reporting.

Once the usage is reported, the usage counter is reset to zero. The PCEF continues to track data usage from the zero value after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session and and the usage accumulated between the CCR-CCA will be discarded.

In releases prior to 17.0, CCR-U triggered on server retries does not take server granted quota into account for reporting USU. In 17.0 and later releases, CCR-U triggered on server retries takes server granted quota
Into account for reporting USU. For newly created MSCC, interim quota configuration is taken as reference for reporting USU.

For information on how to configure the Volume Reporting over Gx feature, see Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx, on page 66.

**ICSR Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)**

In releases prior to 15.0, post the ICSR switchover, any existing session for which the PCRF has enabled volume reporting used to continue indefinitely until the session is terminated or until CCR-U is sent for a given trigger, without having the volume counted via Gx.

To summarize, after an ICSR switchover, volume reporting over Gx is no longer done for existing sessions. Also, volume usage is not synced to standby chassis.

In 15.0 and later releases, volume threshold and volume usage are synced to standby chassis to support volume reporting over Gx for existing sessions post switchover.

Without this support it cannot cause a subscriber to use higher speeds than what s/he is supposed to get, if volume reporting is for example used to enforce fair usage; the operator may already consider this a revenue loss. It will also severely impact roaming subscribers who are supposed to get a notification and be blocked/redirected once the limits set by the EU roaming regulation are reached. If a session continues now without being blocked, the operator is not allowed to charge for data beyond the limit and will have a significant and real revenue loss (roaming partner may still charge for the data used on their SGSNs).

**How Rel. 7 Gx Works**

This section describes how dynamic policy and charging control for subscribers works with Rel. 7 Gx interface support in GPRS/UMTS networks.

The following figure and table explain the IMSA process between a system and IMS components that is initiated by the UE.

In this example, the Diameter Policy Control Application (DPCA) is the Gx interface to the PCRF. The interface between IMSA with PCRF is the Gx interface, and the interface between Session Manager (SessMgr) and Online Charging Service (OCS) is the Gy interface. Note that the IMSA service and DPCA are part of SessMgr on the system and separated in the figure for illustration purpose only.
In 14.0 and later releases, the DPCA and the IMSA will be acting as one module within the Policy Server interface application.

Figure 10: Rel. 7 Gx IMS Authorization Call Flow

UE  SessMgr  IMSA  DPCA  PCRF  ECSv2  CCS

1  2  3  4  5  6  7

8  9  10  11  12  13

14  15  16  17  18

19  20  21
### Table 5: Rel. 7 Gx IMS Authorization Call flow Description

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>UE (IMS subscriber) requests for primary PDP context activation/creation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SessMgr allocates an IP address to the UE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SessMgr requests IMS Authorization, if IMSA is enabled for the APN.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IMSA allocates resources for the IP CAN session and the bearer, and selects the PCRF to contact based on the user's selection key (for example, msisdn).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IMSA requests the DPCA module to issue an auth request to the PCRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>DPCA sends a CCR initial message to the selected PCRF. This message includes the Context-Type AVP set to PRIMARY and the IP address allocated to the UE. The message may include the Bearer-Usage AVP set to GENERAL. The Bearer-Operation is set to Establishment. The Bearer ID is included if the PCRF does the bearer binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PCRF may send preconfigured charging rules in CCA, if a preconfigured rule set for general purpose PDP context is provided in PCRF. The dynamic rules and the authorized QoS parameters could also be included by the PCRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>DPCA passes the charging rule definition, charging rule install, QoS information received from the PCRF, event triggers, and so on, along with the Bearer ID that corresponds to the rules received from the PCRF to IMSA. IMSA stores the information. If the Bearer ID is absent, and PCRF does the bearer binding, the rule is skipped. Whereas, if the Bearer ID is absent and the PCEF does the bearer binding, the rule is passed onto the ECS to perform bearer binding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>DPCA calls the callback function registered with it by IMSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>IMSA stores the bearer authorized QoS information and notifies the SessMgr. Other PCRF provided information common to the entire PDP session (event trigger, primary/secondary OCS address, and so on) is stored within the IMSA. After processing the information, IMSA notifies the SessMgr about the policy authorization complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>If the validation of the rules fails in IMSA/DPCA, a failure is notified to PCRF containing the Charging-Rule-Report AVP. Else, IMSA initiates creation of ECS session. The APN name, primary/secondary OCS server address, and so on are sent to the ECS from the SessMgr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ECS performs credit authorization by sending CCR(I) to OCS with CC-Request-Type set to INITIAL_REQUEST to open the credit control session. This request includes the active Rulebase-Id (default rulebase ID from the APN/AAA) and GPRS specific attributes (for example, APN, UMTS QoS, and so on).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>OCS returns a CCA initial message that may activate a statically configured Rulebase and may include preemptive quotas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>ECS responds to SessMgr with the response message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SessMgr requests IMSA for the dynamic rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>IMSA sends the dynamic rules to SessMgr. Not that, in 14.0 and later releases, the RAR messages are allowed before the session is established. In earlier releases, until the primary PDP context is established, all RAR messages from the PCRF were rejected. Also note that, in 14.0 and later releases, the RAR message is rejected and RAA is sent with 3002 result code when the recovery of dynamic rule information and audit of Session Manager are in progress. Earlier, the RAR messages were processed by DPCA even when the recovery audit was in progress.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>SessMgr sends the dynamic rule information to the ECS. The gate flow status information and the QoS per flow (charging rule) information are also sent in the message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>ECS activates the predefined rules received, and installs the dynamic rules received. Also, the gate flow status and the QoS parameters are updated by ECS as per the dynamic charging rules. The Gx rulebase is treated as an ECS group-of-ruledefs. The response message contains the Charging Rule Report conveying the status of the rule provisioning at the ECS. ECS performs PCEF bearer binding for rules without bearer ID.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>If the provisioning of rules fails partially, the context setup is accepted, and a new CCR-U is sent to the PCRF with the Charging-Rule-Report containing the PCC rule status for the failed rules. If the provisioning of rules fails completely, the context setup is rejected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Depending on the response for the PDP Context Authorization, SessMgr sends the response to the UE and activates/rejects the call. If the Charging-Rule-Report contains partial failure for any of the rules, the PCRF is notified, and the call is activated. If the Charging-Rule-Report contains complete failure, the call is rejected.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Based on the PCEF bearer binding for the PCC rules at Step 18, the outcome could be one or more network-initiated PDP context procedures with the UE (Network Requested Update PDP Context (NRUPC) / Network Requested Secondary PDP Context Activation (NRSPCA)).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Configuring Rel. 7 Gx Interface**

To configure Rel. 7 Gx interface functionality, the IMS Authorization service must be configured at the context level, and then the APN configured to use the IMS Authorization service.
To configure Rel. 7 Gx interface functionality:

**Step 1** Configure IMS Authorization service at the context level for IMS subscriber in GPRS/UMTS network as described in Configuring IMS Authorization Service at Context Level, on page 63.

**Step 2** Verify your configuration as described in Verifying the Configuration, on page 65.

**Step 3** Configure an APN within the same context to use the IMS Authorization service for IMS subscriber as described in Applying IMS Authorization Service to an APN, on page 65.

**Step 4** Verify your configuration as described in Verifying Subscriber Configuration, on page 66.

**Step 5** Optional: Configure the Volume Reporting over Gx feature as described in Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx, on page 66.

**Step 6** Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command `save configuration`. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Important** Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for complete information regarding all commands.

---

### Configuring IMS Authorization Service at Context Level

Use the following example to configure IMS Authorization service at context level for IMS subscribers in GPRS/UMTS networks:

```plaintext
configure
context <context_name>
    ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>
        p-cscf discovery table {1 | 2} algorithm {ip-address-modulus | msisdn-modulus | round-robin}
        p-cscf table {1 | 2} row-precedence <precedence_value> {address <ip_address> | ipv6-address <ipv6_address>}
        p-cscf table {1 | 2} row-precedence <precedence_value> {address <ip_address> | ipv6-address <ipv6_address>}
        policy-control
diameter origin endpoint <endpoint_name>
diameter dictionary <dictionary>
diameter request-timeout <timeout_duration>
diameter host-select table { { {1 | 2} algorithm {ip-address-modulus | msisdn-modulus | round-robin }} } | prefix-table {1 | 2}
diameter host-select row-precedence <precedence_value> table { { {1 | 2} host <host_name> [realm <realm_id>] [secondary host <host_name> [realm <realm_id>]] [prefix-table {1 | 2}] msisdn-prefix-from <msisdn_prefix_from> msisdn-prefix-to <msisdn_prefix_to> host <host_name> [realm <realm_id>] [secondary host <sec_host_name> [realm <sec_realm_id>]] algorithm {active-standby | round-robin}} } | -noconfirm |
diameter host-select reselect subscriber-limit <subscriber_limit> time-interval <duration>
failure-handling cc-request-type {any-request | initial-request | terminate-request} update-request |}
diameter-result-code {any-error | <result_code> [to <end_result_code>]} {continue | retry-and-terminate | terminate}
end
```

Notes:
• `<context_name>` must be the name of the context where you want to enable IMS Authorization service.

• `<imsa_service_name>` must be the name of the IMS Authorization service to be configured for Rel. 7 Gx interface authentication.

• In releases prior to 18, a maximum of 16 authorization services can be configured globally in the system. There is also a system limit for the maximum number of total configured services. In 18 and later releases, up to a maximum of 30 IMS authorization service profiles can be configured within the system.

• Secondary P-CSCF IP address can be configured in the P-CSCF table. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for more information on the `p-cscf` table command.

In 18 and later releases, the syntax for `p-cscf` table configuration command is:

```
p-cscf table { 1 | 2 } row-precedence precedence_value { ipv4-address ipv4_address | ipv6-address ipv6_address | ipv4-address ipv4_address | ipv6-address ipv6_address | secondary ipv4-address ipv4_address | ipv6-address ipv6_address | ipv4-address ipv4_address | ipv6-address ipv6_address } [ weight value ]
```

• To enable Rel. 7 Gx interface support, pertinent Diameter dictionary must be configured. For information on the specific Diameter dictionary to use, contact your Cisco account representative.

• When configuring the MSISDN prefix range based PCRF selection mechanism:
  
  To enable the Gx interface to connect to a specific PCRF for a range of subscribers configure `msisdn-prefix-from <msisdn_prefix_from>` and `msisdn-prefix-to <msisdn_prefix_to>` with the starting and ending MSISDNs respectively.

  To enable the Gx interface to connect to a specific PCRF for a specific subscriber, configure both `msisdn-prefix-from <msisdn_prefix_from>` and `msisdn-prefix-to <msisdn_prefix_to>` with the same MSISDN.

  In StarOS 8.1 and later releases, per MSISDN prefix range table a maximum of 128 rows can be added. In StarOS 8.0 and earlier releases, a maximum of 100 rows can be added.

  The MSISDN ranges must not overlap between rows.

• The Round Robin algorithm for PCRF selection is effective only over a large number of PCRF selections, and not at a granular level.

• **Optional:** To configure the Quality of Service (QoS) update timeout for a subscriber, in the IMS Authorization Service Configuration Mode, enter the following command:

  `qos-update-timeout <timeout_duration>`

  ![Important](Image)

  This command is obsolete in release 11.0 and later releases.

  • **Optional:** To configure signalling restrictions, in the IMS Authorization Service Configuration Mode, enter the following commands:

  `signaling-flag { deny | permit }

  signaling-flow permit server-address <ip_address> | server-port <port_number> | range <start_number> to <end_number> | [ description <string> ]`

  • **Optional:** To configure action on packets that do not match any policy gates in the general purpose PDP context, in the IMS Authorization Service Configuration Mode, enter the following command:
traffic-policy general-pdp-context no-matching-gates direction { downlink | uplink } { forward | discard }

- To configure the PCRF host destinations configured in the GGSN/PCEF, use the `diameter host-select` CLI commands.
- To configure the GGSN/PCEF to use a pre-defined rule when the Gx fails, set the `failure-handling cc-request-type` CLI to `continue`. Policies available/in use will continue to be used and there will be no further interaction with the PCRF.
- For provisioning of default charging method, use the following configurations. For this, the AVPs Online and Offline will be sent in CCR-I message based on the configuration. The Online/Offline AVP received at command level applies only to dynamic rules if they are not configured at PCC rule level.
  - To send Enable Online:
    ```
    configure
    active-charging service <ecs_service_name>
    charging-action <charging_action_name>
    cca charging credit
    exit
    ```
  - To send Enable Offline:
    ```
    configure
    active-charging service <ecs_service_name>
    rulebase <rulebase_name>
    billing-records rf
    exit
    ```

**Verifying the Configuration**

To verify the IMS Authorization service configuration:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 1</th>
<th>Change to the context where you enabled IMS Authorization service by entering the following command:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>context &lt;context_name&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step 2</th>
<th>Verify the IMS Authorization service's configurations by entering the following command:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization service name &lt;imsa_service_name&gt;</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Applying IMS Authorization Service to an APN**

After configuring IMS Authorization service at the context-level, an APN must be configured to use the IMS Authorization service for an IMS subscriber.
Use the following example to apply IMS Authorization service functionality to a previously configured APN within the context configured as described in Configuring Rel. 7 Gx Interface, on page 62.

```
configure
    context <context_name>
        apn <apn_name>
            ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>
            active-charging rulebase <rulebase_name>
        end
```

**Notes:**

- `<context_name>` must be the name of the context in which the IMS Authorization service was configured.
- `<imsa_service_name>` must be the name of the IMS Authorization service configured for IMS authentication in the context.
- For Rel. 7 Gx, the ECS rulebase must be configured in the APN.
- ECS allows change of rulebase via Gx for PCEF binding scenarios. When the old rulebase goes away, all the rules that were installed from that rulebase are removed. This may lead to termination of a few bearers (PDP contexts) if they are left without any rules. If there is a Gx message that changes the rulebase, and also activates some predefined rules, the rulebase change is made first, and the rules are activated from the new rulebase. Also, the rulebase applies to the entire call. All PDP contexts (bearers) in one call use the same ECS rulebase.
- For predefined rules configured in the ECS, MBR/GBR of a dynamic/predefined rule is checked before it is used for PCEF binding. All rules (dynamic as well as predefined) have to have an MBR associated with them and all rules with GBR QCI should have GBR also configured. So for predefined rules, one needs to configure appropriate peak-data-rate, committed-data-rate as per the QCI being GBR QCI or non-GBR QCI. For more information, in the ACS Charging Action Configuration Mode, see the **flow limit-for-bandwidth** CLI command.
- For interpretation of the Gx rulebase (Charging-Rule-Base-Name AVP) from PCRF as ECS group-of-ruledefs, configure the following command in the Active Charging Service Configuration Mode:

  ```
  policy-control charging-rule-base-name active-charging-group-of-ruledefs
  ```

**Verifying Subscriber Configuration**

Verify the IMS Authorization service configuration for subscriber(s) by entering the following command:

```
show subscribers ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>
```

 `<imsa_service_name>` must be the name of the IMS Authorization service configured for IMS authentication.

**Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx**

This section describes the configuration required to enable Volume Reporting over Gx.

To enable Volume Reporting over Gx, use the following configuration:

```
configure
    active-charging service <ecs_service_name>
        rulebase <rulebase_name>
            action priority <priority> dynamic-only ruledef <ruledef_name> charging-action
                <charging_action_name> monitoring-key <monitoring_key>
```

IPSG Administration Guide, StarOS Release 19

66
exit
exit
context <context_name>
ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>

policy-control
event-update send-usage-report [ reset-usage ]
end

Notes:

• The maximum accepted monitoring key value by the PCEF is 4294967295. If the PCEF sends a greater value, the value is converted to an Unsigned Integer value.

• The event-update CLI which enables volume usage report to be sent in event updates is available only in 10.2 and later releases. The optional keyword reset-usage enables to support delta reporting wherein the usage is reported and reset at PCEF. If this option is not configured, the behavior is to send the usage information as part of event update but not reset at PCEF.

Gathering Statistics

This section explains how to gather Rel. 7 Gx statistics and configuration information.

In the following table, the first column lists what statistics to gather, and the second column lists the action to perform.

Table 6: Gathering Rel. 7 Gx Statistics and Information

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistics/Information</th>
<th>Action to perform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information and statistics specific to policy control in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization policy-control statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information and statistics specific to the authorization servers used for IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization servers ims-auth-service</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information of all IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization service all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics of IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization service statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information, configuration, and statistics of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization sessions all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete information, configuration, and statistics of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization sessions full</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summarized information of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td>show ims-authorization sessions summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete statistics for active charging service sessions.</td>
<td>show active-charging sessions full</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Statistics/Information

| Information for all rule definitions configured in the service. | show active-charging ruledef all |
| Information for all rulebases configured in the system. | show active-charging rulebase all |
| Information on all group of ruledefs configured in the system. | show active-charging group-of-ruledefs all |
| Information on policy gate counters and status. | show ims-authorization policy-gate { counters | status } |

This command is no longer an option in StarOS release 11.0 and beyond.

### Rel. 8 Gx Interface

Rel. 8 Gx interface support is available on the Cisco ASR chassis running StarOS 10.0 or StarOS 11.0 and later releases.

This section describes the following topics:

- HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support, on page 68
- P-GW Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support, on page 86

### HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support

This section provides information on configuring Rel. 8 Gx interface for HA and PDSN to support policy and charging control for subscribers in CDMA networks.

The IMS service provides application support for transport of voice, video, and data independent of access support. Roaming IMS subscribers in CDMA networks require apart from other functionality sufficient, uninterrupted, consistent, and seamless user experience during an application session. It is also important that a subscriber gets charged only for the resources consumed by the particular IMS application used.

It is recommended that before using the procedures in this section you select the configuration example that best meets your service model, and configure the required elements for that model as described in this Administration Guide.

This section describes the following topics:

- Introduction, on page 69
- Terminology and Definitions, on page 71
- How it Works, on page 78
- Configuring HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support, on page 82
- Gathering Statistics, on page 85
Introduction

For IMS deployment in CDMA networks the system uses Rel. 8 Gx interface for policy-based admission control support and flow-based charging (FBC). The Rel. 8 Gx interface supports enforcing policy control features like gating, bandwidth limiting, and so on, and also supports FBC. This is accomplished via dynamically provisioned Policy Control and Charging (PCC) rules. These PCC rules are used to identify Service Data Flows (SDF) and to do charging. Other parameters associated with the rules are used to enforce policy control.

The PCC architecture allows operators to perform service-based QoS policy and FBC control. In the PCC architecture, this is accomplished mainly by the Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF)/HA/PDSN and the Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF). The client functionality lies with the HA/PDSN, therefore in the IMS Authorization (IMSA) scenario it is also called the Gateway. The PCEF function is provided by the Enhanced Charging Service (ECS). The Gx interface is implemented as a Diameter connection. The Gx messaging mostly involves installing/modifying/removing dynamic rules and activating/deactivating predefined rules.

The Gx reference point is located between the Gateway/PCEF and the PCRF. This reference point is used for provisioning and removal of PCC rules from the PCRF to the Gateway/PCEF, and the transmission of traffic plane events from the Gateway/PCEF to the PCRF. The Gx reference point can be used for charging control, policy control, or both by applying AVPs relevant to the application.
The following figure shows the reference points between elements involved in the policy and charging architecture.

*Figure 11: HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx PCC Logical Architecture*

Within the Gateway, the IMSA and DPCA modules handle the Gx protocol related functions (at the SessMgr) and the policy enforcement and charging happens at ECS. The Gy protocol related functions are handled within the DCCA module (at the ECS).
The following figure shows the interaction between components within the Gateway.

**Figure 12: HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx PCC Architecture within PCEF**

![Diagram of HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx PCC Architecture within PCEF](image)

**License Requirements**

The HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx interface support is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

**Supported Standards**

HA/PDSN Rel 8. Gx interface support is based on the following standards and RFCs:

- 3GPP TS 23.203 V8.3.0 (2008-09) 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Services and System Aspects; Policy and charging control architecture (Release 8)
- 3GPP TS 29.212 V8.6.0 (2009-12) 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; Policy and Charging Control over Gx reference point (Release 8)
- 3GPP TS 29.213 V8.1.1 (2008-10) 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Core Network and Terminals; Policy and Charging Control signalling flows and QoS parameter mapping; (Release 8)
- RFC 3588, Diameter Base Protocol; September 2003
- RFC 4006, Diameter Credit-Control Application; August 2005

**Terminology and Definitions**

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx functionality.
Policy Control

The process whereby the PCRF indicates to the PCEF how to control the IP-CAN session.
Policy control comprises the following functions:

- Binding
- Gating Control
- Event Reporting
- QoS Control
- Other Features

Binding

In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, since there are no bearers within a MIP session the IP-CAN Bearer concept does not apply. Only authorized IP-CAN session is applicable.

Gating Control

Gating control is the blocking or allowing of packets belonging to an SDF, to pass through to the desired endpoint. A gate is described within a PCC rule and gating control is applied on a per SDF basis. The commands to open or close the gate leads to the enabling or disabling of the passage for corresponding IP packets. If the gate is closed, all packets of the related IP flows are dropped. If the gate is open, the packets of the related IP flows are allowed to be forwarded.

Event Reporting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unconditional reporting of event triggers from PCRF to PCEF when PCEF has not requested for is not supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, only the AN_GW_CHANGE (21) event trigger is supported.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Event reporting is the notification of and reaction to application events to trigger new behavior in the user plane as well as the reporting of events related to the resources in the Gateway (PCEF). Event triggers may be used to determine which IP-CAN session modification or specific event causes the PCEF to re-request PCC rules. Event trigger reporting from PCEF to PCRF, and provisioning of event triggers happens at IP-CAN session level.

The Event Reporting Function (ERF) located in the PCEF, receives event triggers from PCRF during the Provision of PCC Rules procedure and performs event trigger detection. When an event matching the received event trigger occurs, the ERF reports the occurred event to the PCRF. If the provided event triggers are associated with certain parameter values then the ERF includes those values in the response to the PCRF.

QoS Control

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, only authorized IP-CAN Session is supported. Provisioning of authorized QoS per IP-CAN bearer, policy enforcement for authorized QoS per QCI, and coordination of authorized QoS scopes in mixed mode are not applicable.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
QoS control is the authorization and enforcement of the maximum QoS that is authorized for an SDF. In case of an aggregation of multiple SDFs, the combination of the authorized QoS information of the individual SDFs is provided as the authorized QoS for this aggregate. QoS control per SDF allows the PCC architecture to provide the PCEF with the authorized QoS to be enforced for each specific SDF.

QoS authorization information may be dynamically provisioned by the PCRF, or it can be a predefined PCC rule in the PCEF. For a predefined PCC rule within the PCEF, the authorized QoS information takes affect when the PCC rule is activated. The PCEF combines the different sets of authorized QoS information, that is the information received from the PCRF and the information corresponding to the predefined PCC rules. The PCRF knows the authorized QoS information of the predefined PCC rules and takes this information into account when activating them. This ensures that the combined authorized QoS of a set of PCC rules that are activated by the PCRF is within the limitations given by the subscription and operator policies regardless of whether these PCC rules are dynamically provided, predefined, or both.

Supported features include:

- Provisioning and Policy Enforcement of Authorized QoS: The PCRF may provide authorized QoS to the PCEF. The authorized QoS provides appropriate values for resources to be enforced.
- Policy Provisioning for Authorized QoS Per SDF: The provisioning of authorized QoS per SDF is a part of PCC rule provisioning procedure.
- Policy Enforcement for Authorized QoS Per SDF: If an authorized QoS is defined for a PCC rule, the PCEF limits the data rate of the SDF corresponding to that PCC rule not to exceed the maximum authorized bandwidth for the PCC rule by discarding packets exceeding the limit.
- Upon deactivation or removal of a PCC rule, the PCEF frees the resources reserved for that PCC rule.

Other Features

This section describes some of the other features.

PCC Rule Error Handling

If the installation/activation of one or more PCC rules fails, the PCEF communicates the failure to the PCRF by including one or more Charging-Rule-Report AVP(s) in either a CCR or an RAA command for the affected PCC rules. Within each Charging-Rule-Report AVP, the PCEF identifies the failed PCC rule(s) by including the Charging-Rule-Name AVP(s) or Charging-Rule-Base-Name AVP(s), identifies the failed reason code by including a Rule-Failure-Code AVP, and includes the PCC-Rule-Status AVP.

If the installation/activation of one or more new PCC rules (that is, rules that were not previously successfully installed) fail, the PCEF sets the PCC-Rule-Status to INACTIVE for both the PUSH and the PULL modes.

If a PCC rule was successfully installed/activated, but can no longer be enforced by the PCEF, the PCEF sends the PCRF a new CCR command and includes the Charging-Rule-Report AVP. The PCEF includes the Rule-Failure-Code AVP within the Charging-Rule-Report AVP and sets the PCC-Rule-Status to INACTIVE.

In releases prior to 18, P-GW/GGSN does not send CCR-U with Charging Rule report for rule binding failure occurred during 4G to 3G HO in a collision case where create/update bearer response in 3G/4G is pending and update bearer of 3G HO is received. In 18 and later releases, CCR-U is generated and sent to PCRF for reporting rule failure when the collision happens during GnGp HO scenario.

This additional Gx message (CCR-U) triggered will require multiple CCR-U to be configured when RAT_TYPE trigger is enabled. Otherwise, the subscriber call will be dropped whenever the collision happens during HO.

In the HA/PDSN Gx implementation, the following rule failure codes are supported:

- RATING_GROUP_ERROR (2)
• SERVICE_IDENTIFIER_ERROR (3)
• GW/PCEF_MALFUNCTION (4)
• RESOURCESLIMITATION (5)

If the installation/activation of one or more PCC rules fails during RAR procedure, the RAA command is sent with the Experimental-Result-Code AVP set to DIAMETER_PCC_RULE_EVENT (5142).

Time of the Day Procedures
PCEF performs PCC rule request as instructed by the PCRF. Revalidation-Time when set by the PCRF, causes the PCEF to trigger a PCRF interaction to request PCC rules from the PCRF for an established IP-CAN session. The PCEF stops the timer once the PCEF triggers a REVALIDATION_TIMEOUT event.

When installed, the PCC rule is inactive. If Rule-Activation-Time / Rule-Deactivation-Time is specified, then the PCEF sets the rule active / inactive after that time.

In releases prior to 17.0, if "Rule-Deactivation-Time" AVP for a predefined rule was omitted in a CCA-U or RAR message, then any previous value for this AVP was continued to be used in the chassis. In 17.0 and later releases, if Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP is omitted in CCA/RAR, then any previous value for this AVP is no longer valid. The new behavior is compliant to the 3GPP specification for Gx, version 12.1.0.

If PCRF enables the same predefined rule again in RAR/CCA-U without Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP, then the deactivation-time for this rule, if any, will be removed.

For switching to the old behavior, PCRF should re-send the same value of Rule-Deactivation-Time AVP along with predef-rule name in the PCRF message (RAR, CCA-U).

---

**Note**

This behavior change is applicable only to predefined rules.

Support for Firewall Policy on Gx
The Diameter AVP "SN-Firewall-Policy" has been added to the Diameter dynamic dictionary to support Firewall policy on Gx interface. This AVP can be encoded in CCA-I message to apply/overwrite the fw-and-nat policy that has either been statically assigned to the PDP context via APN configuration or dynamically assigned via RADIUS in Access-Accept. This AVP can also parsed in any CCA-U or RAR message to modify the fw-and-nat policy that is currently assigned to the PDP context.

**Charging Control**

**Important**

In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, offline charging is not supported.

Charging Control is the process of associating packets belonging to an SDF to a charging key, and applying online charging as appropriate. FBC handles differentiated charging of the bearer usage based on real-time analysis of the SDFs. In order to allow for charging control, the information in the PCC rule identifies the SDF and specifies the parameters for charging control. The PCC rule information may depend on subscription data.

Online charging is supported via the Gy interface. In the case of online charging, it is possible to apply an online charging action upon PCEF events (for example, re-authorization upon QoS change).
It is possible to indicate to the PCEF that interactions with the charging systems are not required for a PCC rule, that is to perform neither accounting nor credit control for this SDF, then neither online nor offline charging is performed.

Supported Features:

- Provisioning of charging-related information for the IP-CAN Session
- Provisioning of charging addresses: Primary or secondary event charging function name (Online Charging Server (OCS) addresses)

**Important**

In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, provisioning of primary or secondary charging collection function name (Offline Charging Server (OFCS) addresses) over Gx is not supported.

- Provisioning of Default Charging Method: In this release, the default charging method is sent in CCR-I message. For this, new AVPs Online/Offline are sent in CCR-I message based on the configuration. The Online/Offline AVP received at command level applies only to dynamic rules if they are not configured at PCC rule level.

**Charging Correlation**

In the HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx implementation, Charging Correlation is not supported. PCRF provides the flow identifier, which uniquely identifies an IP flow in an IMS session.

**Policy and Charging Control (PCC) Rules**

A PCC rule enables the detection of an SDF and provides parameters for policy control and/or charging control. The purpose of the PCC rule is to:

- Detect a packet belonging to an SDF in case of both uplink and downlink IP flows based on SDF filters in the PCC rule (packet rule matching).
  - If no PCC rule matches the packet, the packet is dropped.
- Identify the service that the SDF contributes to.
- Provide applicable charging parameters for an SDF.
- Provide policy control for an SDF.

The PCEF selects a PCC rule for each packet received by evaluating received packets against SDF filters of PCC rules in the order of precedence of the PCC rules. When a packet matches an SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied.

There are two types of PCC rules:

- Dynamic PCC Rules: Rules dynamically provisioned by the PCRF to the PCEF via the Gx interface. These PCC rules may be either predefined or dynamically generated in the PCRF. Dynamic PCC rules can be activated, modified, and deactivated at any time.
- Predefined PCC Rule: Rules preconfigured in the PCEF by the operators. Predefined PCC rules can be activated or deactivated by the PCRF at any time. Predefined PCC rules within the PCEF may be grouped allowing the PCRF to dynamically activate a set of PCC rules over the Gx reference point.
A third kind of rule, the static PCC rule can be preconfigured in the chassis by the operators. Static PCC rules are not explicitly known in the PCRF, and are not under control of the PCRF. Static PCC rules are bound to general purpose bearer with no Gx control.

A PCC rule consists of:

- Rule Name: The rule name is used to reference a PCC rule in the communication between the PCEF and PCRF.
- Service Identifier: The service identifier is used to identify the service or the service component the SDF relates to.
- Service Data Flow Filter(s): The service flow filter(s) is used to select the traffic for which the rule applies.
- Precedence: For different PCC rules with overlapping SDF filter, the precedence of the rule determines which of these rules is applicable. When a dynamic PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same priority, the dynamic PCC rule takes precedence.
- Gate Status: The gate status indicates whether the SDF, detected by the SDF filter(s), may pass (gate is open) or will be discarded (gate is closed) in uplink and/or in downlink direction.
- QoS Parameters: The QoS information includes the QoS class identifier (authorized QoS class for the SDF), and authorized bitrates for uplink and downlink.
- Charging Key (rating group)
- Other charging parameters: The charging parameters define whether online charging interfaces are used, on what level the PCEF will report the usage related to the rule, etc.

Important
Configuring the Metering Method and Reporting Level for dynamic PCC rules is not supported.

PCC rules also include Application Function (AF) record information for enabling charging correlation between the application and bearer layer if the AF has provided this information via the Rx interface. For IMS, this includes the IMS Charging Identifier (ICID) and flow identifiers.

Important
ASR5K supports only eight flow information including the flow description per dynamic charging rule in a Gx message.

In releases prior to 14.0, there were only 10 PCC rules that were recovered per bearer in the event of a session manager crash. In 14.0 and later releases, this limit has been increased to 24. That is, up to 24 PCC rules can be recovered post ICSR.

With the increase in the limit of PCC rules that can be recovered, the rules are not lost and hence the charging applied to the end users are not impacted.

In releases prior to 17.0, when P-GW received PCC rules from PCRF and it results in Create Bearer or Update Bearer to be triggered towards MME/S-GW, the PCC rules were kept in a pending-active state. Any modification request that was received for these pending-active rules were not currently honored by the P-GW. In 17.0 and later releases, when modification for the PCC rules in pending-active state is received, the modified parameters will be buffered at P-GW. After the response for the pending request is received from the access
network, P-GW will process the modification of the buffered parameters and if required generate another update towards network.

PCC Procedures over Gx Reference Point

Request for PCC Rules

The PCEF, via the Gx reference point, requests for PCC rules in the following instances:

- At IP-CAN session establishment
- At IP-CAN session modification

PCC rules can also be requested as a consequence of a failure in the PCC rule installation/activation or enforcement without requiring an event trigger.

Provisioning of PCC Rules

The PCRF indicates, via the Rel. 8 Gx reference point, the PCC rules to be applied at the PCEF. This may be using one of the following procedures:

- PULL (provisioning solicited by the PCEF): In response to a request for PCC rules being made by the PCEF, the PCRF provisions PCC rules in the CC-Answer.
- PUSH (unsolicited provisioning): The PCRF may decide to provision PCC rules without obtaining a request from the PCEF. For example, in response to information provided to the PCRF via the Rx reference point, or in response to an internal trigger within the PCRF. To provision PCC rules without a request from the PCEF, the PCRF includes these PCC rules in an RA-Request message. No CCR/CCA messages are triggered by this RA-Request.

For each request from the PCEF or upon unsolicited provisioning, the PCRF provisions zero or more PCC rules. The PCRF may perform an operation on a single PCC rule by one of the following means:

- To activate or deactivate a PCC rule that is predefined at the PCEF, the PCRF provisions a reference to this PCC rule within a Charging-Rule-Name AVP and indicates the required action by choosing either the Charging-Rule-Install AVP or the Charging-Rule-Remove AVP.
- To install or modify a PCRF-provisioned PCC rule, the PCRF provisions a corresponding Charging-Rule-Definition AVP within a Charging-Rule-Install AVP.
- To remove a PCC rule which has previously been provisioned by the PCRF, the PCRF provisions the name of this rule as value of a Charging-Rule-Name AVP within a Charging-Rule-Remove AVP.

Important

In 11.0 and later releases, the maximum valid length for a charging rule name is 63 bytes. When the length of the charging rule name is greater than 63 bytes, a charging rule report with RESOURCES_LIMITATION as Rule-Failure-Code is sent. This charging rule report is sent only when the length of the rule name is lesser than 128 characters. When the charging rule name length is greater than or equal to 128 characters no charging rule report will be sent. In earlier releases, the length of the charging rule name constructed by PCRF was limited to 32 bytes.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCRF has subscribed to Out of Credit trigger, on session connect when one rule validation fails and also when an Out of Credit was received from OCS for another rule, P-GW was trying to report these failures in different CCR-U to PCRF. However, the second CCR-U of Out of credit was getting dropped internally.
In 14.0 and later releases, on session connect, P-GW combines the rule failure and out of credit in the same CCR-U and sends to PCRF.

Selecting a PCC Rule for Uplink IP Packets
If PCC is enabled, the PCEF selects the applicable PCC rule for each received uplink IP packet within an IP-CAN session by evaluating the packet against uplink SDF filters of PCRF-provided or predefined active PCC rules of this IP-CAN session in the order of the precedence of the PCC rules.

**Important**
When a PCRF-provided PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same precedence, the uplink SDF filters of the PCRF-provided PCC rule is applied first.

When a packet matches an SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied. Uplink IP packets which do not match any PCC rule of the corresponding IP-CAN session are discarded.

Selecting a PCC Rule for Downlink IP Packets
If PCC is enabled, the PCEF selects a PCC rule for each received downlink IP packet within an IP-CAN session by evaluating the packet against downlink SDF filters of PCRF-provided or predefined active PCC rules of the IP-CAN session in the order of precedence of the PCC rules.

**Important**
When a PCRF-provided PCC rule and a predefined PCC rule have the same precedence, the downlink SDF filters of the PCRF-provided PCC rule are applied first.

When a packet matches an SDF filter, the packet matching process for that packet is completed, and the PCC rule for that filter is applied. Downlink IP packets that do not match any PCC rule of the IP-CAN session are discarded.

The following procedures are also supported:

- **Indication of IP-CAN Session Termination**: When the IP-CAN session is being terminated the PCEF contacts the PCRF.
- **Request of IP-CAN Session Termination**: If the PCRF decides to terminate an IP-CAN session due to an internal trigger or trigger from the SPR, the PCRF informs the PCEF. The PCEF acknowledges to the PCRF and instantly removes/deactivates all the PCC rules that have been previously installed or activated on that IP-CAN session.

The PCEF applies IP-CAN specific procedures to terminate the IP-CAN session. The HA/PDSN sends a MIP Revocation Request with the teardown indicator set to indicate that the termination of the entire IP-CAN session is requested. Furthermore, the PCEF applies the "Indication of IP-CAN Session Termination" procedure.

- **Use of the Supported-Features AVP during session establishment** to inform the destination host about the required and optional features that the origin host supports.

**How it Works**
This section describes how HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface support works.

The following figure and table explain the IMS Authorization process between a system and IMS components that is initiated by the UE.
In this example, the Diameter Policy Control Application (DPCA) is the Gx interface to the PCRF. The interface between IMSA with PCRF is the Gx interface, and the interface between Session Manager (SessMgr) and Online Charging Service (OCS) is the Gy interface. Note that the IMSA service and DPCA are part of SessMgr on the system and separated in the figure for illustration purpose only.
In 14.0 and later releases, the DPCA and the IMSA will be acting as one module within the Policy Server interface application.

**Figure 13: HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx IMS Authorization Call Flow**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>UE (IMS subscriber) requests for MIP Registration Request.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SessMgr allocates an IP address to the UE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>SessMgr requests IMS Authorization, if IMSA is enabled for the subscriber. IMSA service can either be configured in the subscriber template, or can be received from the AAA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>IMSA allocates resources for the IP-CAN session, and selects the PCRF to contact based on the user's selection key (for example, round-robin).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>IMSA requests the DPCA module to issue an auth request to the PCRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>DPCA sends a CCR initial message to the selected PCRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>PCRF may send preconfigured charging rules in CCA. The dynamic rules and the authorized QoS parameters could also be included by the PCRF.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>DPCA passes the charging rule definition, charging rule install, QoS information received from the PCRF, event triggers, etc. IMSA stores the information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>DPCA calls the callback function registered with it by IMSA.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>PCRF-provided information common to the entire IP-CAN session (event trigger, primary/secondary OCS address, etc.) is stored within the IMSA. After processing the information, IMSA notifies the SessMgr about the policy authorization complete.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>If the validation of the rules fails in IMSA/DPCA, a failure is notified to PCRF containing the Charging-Rule-Report AVP. Else, IMSA initiates creation of ECS session. The primary/secondary OCS server address, etc. are sent to the ECS from the SessMgr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>ECS performs credit authorization by sending CCR(I) to OCS with CC-Request-Type set to INITIAL_REQUEST to open the credit control session. This request includes the active Rulebase-Id (default rulebase ID from the AAA).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>OCS returns a CCA initial message that may activate a statically configured Rulebase and may include preemptive quotas.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>ECS responds to SessMgr with the response message.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SessMgr requests IMSA for the dynamic rules.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Step</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 16   | IMSA sends the dynamic rules to SessMgr.  
Note that, in 14.0 and later releases, the RAR messages are allowed before the session is established.  
In earlier releases, until the MIP session is established, all RAR messages from the PCRF were rejected.  
Also note that, in 14.0 and later releases, the RAR message is rejected and RAA is sent with 3002 result code when the recovery of dynamic rule information and audit of Session Manager are in progress. Earlier, the RAR messages were processed by DPCA even when the recovery audit was in progress. |
| 17   | SessMgr sends the dynamic rule information to the ECS. The gate flow status information and the QoS per flow (charging rule) information are also sent in the message. |
| 18   | ECS activates the predefined rules received, and installs the dynamic rules received. Also, the gate flow status and the QoS parameters are updated by ECS as per the dynamic charging rules. The Gx rulebase is treated as an ECS group-of-ruledefs. The response message contains the Charging Rule Report conveying the status of the rule provisioning at the ECS. |
| 19   | If the provisioning of rules fails partially, the context setup is accepted, and a new CCR-U is sent to the PCRF with the Charging-Rule-Report containing the PCC rule status for the failed rules. If the provisioning of rules fails completely, the context setup is rejected. |
| 20   | Depending on the response for the MIP Session Authorization, SessMgr sends the response to the UE and activates/rejects the call. If the Charging-Rule-Report contains partial failure for any of the rules, the PCRF is notified, and the call is activated. If the Charging-Rule-Report contains complete failure, the call is rejected. |

**Configuring HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support**

To configure HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Interface functionality:

1. At the context level, configure IMSA service for IMS subscribers as described in Configuring IMS Authorization Service at Context Level, on page 83.

2. Within the same context, configure the subscriber template to use the IMSA service as described in Applying IMS Authorization Service to Subscriber Template, on page 84.

3. Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command `save configuration`. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Important**

Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for complete information regarding all commands.
Configuring IMS Authorization Service at Context Level

Use the following example to configure IMSA service at context level for IMS subscribers:

```
configure
ccontext <context_name>
ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>
policy-control
diameter origin endpoint <endpoint_name>
diameter dictionary <dictionary>
diameter request-timeout <timeout_duration>
diameter host-select table { 1 | 2 } algorithm round-robin
diameter host-select row-precedence <precedence_value> table { 1 | 2 } host
<primary_host_name> | realm <primary_realm_id> | secondary host <secondary_host_name> | realm
<secondary_realm_id> | | | -noconfirm
failure-handling cc-request-type { any-request | initial-request | terminate-request | update-request } { diameter-result-code { any-error | <result_code> | to <end_result_code> | } } { continue 
| retry-and-terminate | terminate }
exit
exit
diameter endpoint <endpoint_name> | -noconfirm |
origin realm <realm_name>
use-proxy
origin host <host_name> address <ip_address>
no watchdog-timeout
response-timeout <timeout_duration>
connection timeout <timeout_duration>
connection retry-timeout <timeout_duration>
peer <primary_peer_name> | realm <primary_realm_name> | address <ip_address> | port
<port_number> |
peer <secondary_peer_name> | realm <secondary_realm_name> | address <ip_address> | port
<port_number> |
end
```
Verifying the IMSA Service Configuration

To verify the IMSA service configuration:

1. Change to the context where you enabled IMSA service by entering the following command:
   ```
   context <context_name>
   ```

2. Verify the IMSA service configuration by entering the following command:
   ```
   show ims-authorization service name <imsa_service_name>
   ```

Applying IMS Authorization Service to Subscriber Template

After configuring IMSA service at the context-level, within the same context subscriber template must be configured to use the IMSA service for IMS subscribers.

Use the following example to apply IMSA service functionality to subscriber template within the context configured as described in Configuring IMS Authorization Service at Context Level, on page 83.

```configure
context <context_name>
   subscriber default
      encrypted password <encrypted_password>
      ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>
      ip access-group <access_group_name> in
      ip access-group <access_group_name> out
      ip context-name <context_name>
      mobile-ip home-agent <ip_address>
      active-charging rulebase <rulebase_name>
end
```

Notes:

- `<context_name>` must be the name of the context in which the IMSA service was configured.
- `<imsa_service_name>` must be the name of the IMSA service configured for IMS authentication in the context.
- The ECS rulebase must be configured in the subscriber template.
- For interpretation of the Gx rulebase (Charging-Rule-Base-Name AVP) from PCRF as ECS group-of-ruledefs, configure the following command in the Active Charging Service Configuration Mode:

  ```policy-control charging-rule-base-name active-charging-group-of-ruledefs```

Verifying the Subscriber Configuration

Verify the IMSA service configuration for subscriber(s) by entering the following command in the Exec CLI configuration mode:

```show subscribers ims-auth-service <imsa_service_name>```

Notes:

- `<imsa_service_name>` must be the name of the IMSA service configured for IMS authentication.
Gathering Statistics

This section explains how to gather Rel. 8 Gx statistics and configuration information.

In the following table, the first column lists what statistics to gather, and the second column lists the action to perform.

**Table 8: Gathering HA/PDSN Rel. 8 Gx Statistics and Information**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Statistics/Information</th>
<th>Action to perform</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Information and statistics specific to policy control in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization policy-control statistics</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information and statistics specific to the authorization servers used for IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization servers  ims-auth-service</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information of all IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization service all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics of IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization service statistics</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information, configuration, and statistics of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization sessions all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete information, configuration, and statistics of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization sessions full</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Summarized information of sessions active in IMS Authorization service.</td>
<td><code>show ims-authorization sessions summary</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complete statistics for active charging service sessions.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging sessions full</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information for all rule definitions configured in the service.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging ruledef all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information for all rulebases configured in the system.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging rulebase all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information on all group of ruledefs configured in the system.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging group-of-ruledefs all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information on policy gate counters and status.</td>
<td>`show ims-authorization policy-gate { counters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>This command is no longer an option in StarOS release 11.0 and beyond.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
P-GW Rel. 8 Gx Interface Support

Introduction

The Gx reference point is located between the Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF) and the Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF) on the Packet Data Network (PDN) Gateway (P-GW). The Gx reference point is used for provisioning and removal of PCC rules from the PCRF to the PCEF and the transmission of traffic plane events from the PCEF to the PCRF. The Gx reference point can be used for charging control, policy control, or both, by applying AVPs relevant to the application.

The PCEF is the functional element that encompasses policy enforcement and flow based charging functionality. This functional entity is located at the P-GW. The main functions include:

- Control over the user plane traffic handling at the gateway and its QoS.
- Service data flow detection and counting, as well as online and offline charging interactions.
- For a service data flow that is under policy control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if the corresponding gate is open.
- For a service data flow that is under charging control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if there is a corresponding active PCC rule and, for online charging, the OCS has authorized the applicable credit with that charging key.
- If requested by the PCRF, the PCEF will report to the PCRF when the status of the related service data flow changes.
- In case the SDF is tunnelled at the BBERF, the PCEF informs the PCRF about the mobility protocol tunnelling header of the service data flows at IP-CAN session establishment.

Terminology and Definitions

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to Rel. 8 Gx functionality.

Volume Reporting Over Gx

This section describes the 3GPP Rel. 9 Volume Reporting over Gx feature.

License Requirements

The Volume Reporting over Gx is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Important

In 12.0 and later releases, no separate license is required for Charging over Gx / Volume Reporting over Gx feature. This feature can be enabled as part of "Policy Interface" license.

Supported Standards

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature is based on the following standard:

Feature Overview

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature provides PCRF the capability to make real-time decisions based on the data usage by subscribers.

Important

Volume Reporting over Gx is applicable only for volume quota.

In release 10.0, only total data usage reporting is supported, uplink/downlink level reporting is not supported. In 10.2 and later releases, it is supported.

The PCEF only reports the accumulated usage since the last report for usage monitoring and not from the beginning.

If the usage threshold is set to zero (infinite threshold), no further threshold events will be generated by PCEF, but monitoring of usage will continue and be reported at the end of the session.

In 12.2 and later releases, usage reporting on bearer termination is supported.

The following steps explain how Volume Reporting over Gx works:

1. PCEF after receiving the message from PCRF parses the usage monitoring related AVPs, and sends the information to IMSA.
2. IMSA updates the information to ECS.
3. Once the ECS is updated with the usage monitoring information from PCRF, the PCEF (ECS) starts tracking the data usage.
4. For session-level monitoring, the ECS maintains the amount of data usage.
5. For PCC rule monitoring, usage is monitored with the monitoring key as the unique identifier. Each node maintains the usage information per monitoring key. When the data traffic is passed, the usage is checked against the usage threshold values and reported as described in the Usage Reporting section.
6. The PCEF continues to track data usage after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.

Usage Monitoring

- Usage Monitoring at Session Level: PCRF subscribes to the session-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to SESSION_LEVEL(0). After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. In 11.0 and later releases, Monitoring Key at session level is supported.

In 12.0 and later releases, enabling and disabling session usage in a single message from PCRF is supported. This is supported only if the monitoring key is associated at session level.

In 12.0 and later releases, monitoring of usage based on input/output octet threshold levels is supported. Usage is reported based on the enabled threshold level. If multiple levels are enabled, usage will be reported on all the enabled levels even if only one of the levels is breached. Monitoring will be stopped
on the missing threshold levels in the response for the usage report from PCRF (expected to provide the complete set again if PCRF wants to continue monitoring on the multiple levels enabled earlier).

Total threshold level along with UL/DL threshold level in the GSU AVP is treated as an error and only total threshold level is accepted.

In releases prior to 17.0, extra CCR-U was generated for a monitoring key when the following requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key.

- immediate reporting request with monitoring key at rule level
- immediate reporting request with or without monitoring key at session level
- explicit disable request at rule level
- explicit disable request at session level

In 17.0 and later releases, extra CCR-U is not generated for a monitoring key when all the above mentioned requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key. Also, extra CCR-U is not generated when immediate reporting request without monitoring key at rule level is received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for all the active monitoring keys.

- Usage Monitoring at Flow Level: PCRF subscribes to the flow-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to PCC_RULE_LEVEL(1). Monitoring Key is mandatory in case of a flow-level monitoring since the rules are associated with the monitoring key and enabling/disabling of usage monitoring at flow level can be controlled by PCRF using it. After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

Usage monitoring is supported for static, predefined rules, and dynamic rule definitions.

- Usage Monitoring for Static Rules: In the case of static rules, the usage reporting on last rule removal associated with the monitoring key is not applicable. In this case only the usage monitoring information is received from the PCRF.

- Usage Monitoring for Predefined Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for the predefined rules, PCRF sends the rule and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. The Monitoring key should be same as the one pre-configured in PCEF for that predefined rule. There can be multiple rules associated with the same monitoring key. Hence enabling a particular monitoring key would result in the data being tracked for multiple rules having the same monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

- Usage Monitoring for Dynamic Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for dynamic ruledefs, PCRF provides the monitoring key along with a charging rule definition and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. This would result in the usage monitoring being done for all the rules associated with that monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated, the usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. Monitoring key for dynamic ruledef is dynamically assigned by PCRF which is the only difference with predefined rules in case of usage monitoring.
In releases prior to 15.0, when threshold breach happens for multiple monitoring keys at the same time, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported and the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported in CCR-T (threshold set to infinity). On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS and reported only on session termination.

In 15.0 and later releases, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported first. Upon receiving successful response from PCRF, the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported to PCRF. On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS. Any future successful interaction with PCRF for the session will send unreported UMI to PCRF.

**Usage Reporting**

Usage at subscriber/flow level is reported to PCRF under the following conditions:

- **Usage Threshold Reached**: PCEF records the subscriber data usage and checks if the usage threshold provided by PCRF is reached. This is done for both session and rule level reporting.

  For session-level reporting, the actual usage volume is compared with the usage volume threshold.

  For rule-level reporting the rule that hits the data traffic is used to find out if the monitoring key is associated with it, and based on the monitoring key the data usage is checked. Once the condition is met, it reports the usage information to IMSA and continues monitoring. IMSA then triggers the CCR-U if "USAGE_REPORT" trigger is enabled by the PCRF. The Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP is sent in this CCR with the "Used-Service-Unit" set to the amount of data usage by subscriber.

  If PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold in the usage monitoring information as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no usage status is reported.

  In the non-standard Volume Reporting over Gx implementation, usage monitoring will be stopped once the threshold is breached, else the monitoring will continue. There will be no further usage reporting until the CCA is received.

- **Usage Monitoring Disabled**: If the PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring with Usage-Monitoring-Support AVP set to USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED, the PCEF stops monitoring and reports the usage information (when the monitoring was enabled) to PCRF if the usage monitoring is disabled by PCRF as a result of CCR from PCEF which is not related to reporting usage, other external triggers, or a PCRF internal trigger. If the PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no further usage status is reported.

- **IP CAN Session Termination**: When the IP CAN session is terminated, the accumulated subscriber usage information is reported to PCRF in the CCR-T from PCEF. If PCC usage level information is enabled by PCRF, the PCC usage will also be reported.

  PCRF uses RAR message and includes Session-Release-Cause AVP in it to initiate IP CAN Session Termination. However, there are some scenarios where PCRF may want to terminate the IP CAN Session in CCA messages. In order to avoid an unnecessary additional message, PCRF can inform P-GW to terminate the subscriber in CCA-U message itself. Hence, in 17.0 and later releases, the Session Release Cause has been added in CCA messages for all Gx dictionaries.

- **PCC Rule Removal**: When the PCRF deactivates the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key, the PCEF sends a CCR with the data usage for that monitoring key. If the PCEF reports the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key is inactive, the PCEF reports the accumulated usage for that monitoring key within the same CCR command if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in a CCR command; otherwise, if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in an RAA command, the PCEF sends a new CCR command to report accumulated usage for the usage monitoring key. In
12.0 and later releases, usage reporting on last rule deactivation using rule deactivation time set by PCRF is supported.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCC rule was tried to be removed while waiting for access side update bearer response, the charging rules were not removed. In 14.0 and later releases, on receiving message from PCRF, the rule that is meant for removal is marked and then after the access side procedure is complete the rule is removed.

• **PCRF Requested Usage Report:** In 10.2 and later releases, the accumulated usage since the last report is sent even in case of immediate reporting, the usage is reset after immediate reporting and usage monitoring continued so that the subsequent usage report will have the usage since the current report. In earlier releases the behavior was to accumulate the so far usage in the next report.

• Release 12.2 onwards, usage reporting on bearer termination can be added. When a bearer is deleted due to some reason, the rules associated with the bearer will also be removed. So, the usage will be reported on the monitoring key(s) whose associated rule is the last one that is removed because of bearer termination.

• **Revalidation Timeout:** In the non-standard implementation, if usage monitoring and reporting is enabled and a revalidation timeout occurs, the PCEF sends a CCR to request PCC rules and reports all accumulated usage for all enabled monitoring keys since the last report (or since usage reporting was enabled if the usage was not yet reported) with the accumulated usage at IP-CAN session level (if enabled) and at service data flow level (if enabled) This is the default behavior.

In the case of standard implementation, this must be enabled by CLI configuration.

---

**Important**

The Usage Reporting on Revalidation Timeout feature is available by default in non-standard implementation of Volume Reporting over Gx. In 10.2 and later releases, this is configurable in the standard implementation. This is not supported in 10.0 release for standard based volume reporting.

---

Once the usage is reported, the usage counter is reset to zero. The PCEF continues to track data usage from the zero value after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session and and the usage accumulated between the CCR-CCA will be discarded.

In releases prior to 17.0, CCR-U triggered on server retries does not take server granted quota into account for reporting USU. In 17.0 and later releases, CCR-U triggered on server retries takes server granted quota into account for reporting USU. For newly created MSCC, interim quota configuration is taken as reference for reporting USU.

For information on how to configure the Volume Reporting over Gx feature, refer to Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx, on page 66.

**ICSR Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)**

In releases prior to 15.0, post the ICSR switchover, any existing session for which the PCRF has enabled volume reporting used to continue indefinitely until the session is terminated or until CCR-U is sent for a given trigger, without having the volume counted via Gx.

To summarize, after an ICSR switchover, volume reporting over Gx is no longer done for existing sessions. Also, volume usage is not synced to standby chassis.

In 15.0 and later releases, volume threshold and volume usage are synced to standby chassis to support volume reporting over Gx for existing sessions post switchover.
Without this support it cannot cause a subscriber to use higher speeds than what s/he is supposed to get, if volume reporting is for example used to enforce fair usage; the operator may already consider this a revenue loss. It will also severely impact roaming subscribers who are supposed to get a notification and be blocked/redirected once the limits set by the EU roaming regulation are reached. If a session continues now without being blocked, the operator is not allowed to charge for data beyond the limit and will have a significant and real revenue loss (roaming partner may still charge for the data used on their SGSNs).

Rel. 9 Gx Interface

Rel. 9 Gx interface support is available on the Cisco ASR chassis running StarOS 12.2 and later releases.

P-GW Rel. 9 Gx Interface Support

Introduction

The Gx reference point is located between the Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF) and the Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF) on the Packet Data Network (PDN) Gateway (P-GW). The Gx reference point is used for provisioning and removal of PCC rules from the PCRF to the PCEF and the transmission of traffic plane events from the PCEF to the PCRF. The Gx reference point can be used for charging control, policy control, or both, by applying AVPs relevant to the application.

The PCEF is the functional element that encompasses policy enforcement and flow based charging functionality. This functional entity is located at the P-GW. The main functions include:

- Control over the user plane traffic handling at the gateway and its QoS.
- Service data flow detection and counting, as well as online and offline charging interactions.
- For a service data flow that is under policy control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if the corresponding gate is open.
- For a service data flow that is under charging control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if there is a corresponding active PCC rule and, for online charging, the OCS has authorized the applicable credit with that charging key.
- If requested by the PCRF, the PCEF reports to the PCRF when the status of the related service data flow changes.
- In case the SDF is tunnelled at the BBERF, the PCEF informs the PCRF about the mobility protocol tunnelling header of the service data flows at IP-CAN session establishment.

Important

ASR5K supports only eight flow information including the flow description per dynamic charging rule in a Gx message.

Terminology and Definitions

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to Rel. 9 Gx functionality.
Volume Reporting Over Gx

This section describes the 3GPP Rel. 9 Volume Reporting over Gx feature.

License Requirements

The Volume Reporting over Gx is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Important

In 12.0 and later releases, no separate license is required for Charging over Gx / Volume Reporting over Gx feature. This feature can be enabled as part of "Policy Interface" license.

Supported Standards

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature is based on the following standard:


Feature Overview

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature provides PCRF the capability to make real-time decisions based on the data usage by subscribers.

Important

Volume Reporting over Gx is applicable only for volume quota.

In release 10.0, only total data usage reporting is supported, uplink/downlink level reporting is not supported. In 10.2 and later releases, it is supported.

In release 10.0, only total data usage reporting is supported, uplink/downlink level reporting is not supported. In 10.2 and later releases, it is supported.

The PCEF only reports the accumulated usage since the last report for usage monitoring and not from the beginning.

If the usage threshold is set to zero (infinite threshold), no further threshold events will be generated by PCEF, but monitoring of usage will continue and be reported at the end of the session.

In 12.2 and later releases, usage reporting on bearer termination is supported.

The following steps explain how Volume Reporting over Gx works:

1. PCEF after receiving the message from PCRF parses the usage monitoring related AVPs, and sends the information to IMSA.

2. IMSA updates the information to ECS.

3. Once the ECS is updated with the usage monitoring information from PCRF, the PCEF (ECS) starts tracking the data usage.

4. For session-level monitoring, the ECS maintains the amount of data usage.
5 For PCC rule monitoring, usage is monitored with the monitoring key as the unique identifier. Each node maintains the usage information per monitoring key. When the data traffic is passed, the usage is checked against the usage threshold values and reported as described in the Usage Reporting section.

6 The PCEF continues to track data usage after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.

**Usage Monitoring**

- **Usage Monitoring at Session Level:** PCRF subscribes to the session-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to SESSION_LEVEL(0). After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. In 11.0 and later releases, Monitoring Key at session level is supported.

In 12.0 and later releases, enabling and disabling session usage in a single message from PCRF is supported. This is supported only if the monitoring key is associated at session level.

In 12.0 and later releases, monitoring of usage based on input/output octet threshold levels is supported. Usage is reported based on the enabled threshold level. If multiple levels are enabled, usage will be reported on all the enabled levels even if only one of the levels is breached. Monitoring will be stopped on the missing threshold levels in the response for the usage report from PCRF (expected to provide the complete set again if PCRF wants to continue monitoring on the multiple levels enabled earlier).

Total threshold level along with UL/DL threshold level in the GSU AVP is treated as an error and only total threshold level is accepted.

In releases prior to 17.0, extra CCR-U was generated for a monitoring key when the following requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key.

- immediate reporting request with monitoring key at rule level
- immediate reporting request with or without monitoring key at session level
- explicit disable request at rule level
- explicit disable request at session level

In 17.0 and later releases, extra CCR-U is not generated for a monitoring key when all the above mentioned requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key. Also, extra CCR-U is not generated when immediate reporting request without monitoring key at rule level is received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for all the active monitoring keys.

- **Usage Monitoring at Flow Level:** PCRF subscribes to the flow-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to PCC_RULE_LEVEL(1). Monitoring Key is mandatory in case of a flow-level monitoring since the rules are associated with the monitoring key and enabling/disabling of usage monitoring at flow level can be controlled by PCRF using it. After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

Usage monitoring is supported for static, predefined rules, and dynamic rule definitions.
Usage Monitoring for Static Rules: In the case of static rules, the usage reporting on last rule removal associated with the monitoring key is not applicable. In this case only the usage monitoring information is received from the PCRF.

Usage Monitoring for Predefined Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for the predefined rules, PCRF sends the rule and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. The Monitoring key should be same as the one pre-configured in PCEF for that predefined rule. There can be multiple rules associated with the same monitoring key. Hence enabling a particular monitoring key would result in the data being tracked for multiple rules having the same monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

Usage Monitoring for Dynamic Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for dynamic rulesdefs, PCRF provides the monitoring key along with a charging rule definition and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. This would result in the usage monitoring being done for all the rules associated with that monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated, the usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. Monitoring key for dynamic rulesdef is dynamically assigned by PCRF which is the only difference with predefined rules in case of usage monitoring.

In releases prior to 15.0, when threshold breach happens for multiple monitoring keys at the same time, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported and the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported in CCR-T (threshold set to infinity). On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS and reported only on session termination.

In 15.0 and later releases, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported first. Upon receiving successful response from PCRF, the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported to PCRF. On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS. Any future successful interaction with PCRF for the session will send unreported UMI to PCRF.

Usage Reporting

Usage at subscriber/flow level is reported to PCRF under the following conditions:

- **Usage Threshold Reached:** PCEF records the subscriber data usage and checks if the usage threshold provided by PCRF is reached. This is done for both session and rule level reporting.
  
  For session-level reporting, the actual usage volume is compared with the usage volume threshold. For rule-level reporting the rule that hits the data traffic is used to find out if the monitoring key is associated with it, and based on the monitoring key the data usage is checked. Once the condition is met, it reports the usage information to IMSA and continues monitoring. IMSA then triggers the CCR-U if "USAGE_REPORT" trigger is enabled by the PCRF. The Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP is sent in this CCR with the "Used-Service-Unit" set to the amount of data usage by subscriber.

  If PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold in the usage monitoring information as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no usage status is reported.

  In the non-standard Volume Reporting over Gx implementation, usage monitoring will be stopped once the threshold is breached, else the monitoring will continue. There will be no further usage reporting until the CCA is received.

- **Usage Monitoring Disabled:** If the PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring with Usage-Monitoring-Support AVP set to USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED, the PCEF stops monitoring
and reports the usage information (when the monitoring was enabled) to PCRF if the usage monitoring is disabled by PCRF as a result of CCR from PCEF which is not related to reporting usage, other external triggers, or a PCRF internal trigger. If the PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no further usage status is reported.

• IP CAN Session Termination: When the IP CAN session is terminated, the accumulated subscriber usage information is reported to PCRF in the CCR-T from PCEF. If PCC usage level information is enabled by PCRF, the PCC usage will also be reported.

PCRF uses RAR message and includes Session-Release-Cause AVP in it to initiate IP CAN Session Termination. However, there are some scenarios where PCRF may want to terminate the IP CAN Session in CCA messages. In order to avoid an unnecessary additional message, PCRF can inform P-GW to terminate the subscriber in CCA-U message itself. Hence, in 17.0 and later releases, the Session Release Cause has been added in CCA messages for all Gx dictionaries.

• PCC Rule Removal: When the PCRF deactivates the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key, the PCEF sends a CCR with the data usage for that monitoring key. If the PCEF reports the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key is inactive, the PCEF reports the accumulated usage for that monitoring key within the same CCR command if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in a CCR command; otherwise, if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in an RAA command, the PCEF sends a new CCR command to report accumulated usage for the usage monitoring key. In 12.0 and later releases, usage reporting on last rule deactivation using rule deactivation time set by PCRF is supported.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCC rule was tried to be removed while waiting for access side update bearer response, the charging rules were not removed. In 14.0 and later releases, on receiving message from PCRF, the rule that is meant for removal is marked and then after the access side procedure is complete the rule is removed.

• PCRF Requested Usage Report: In 10.2 and later releases, the accumulated usage since the last report is sent even in case of immediate reporting, the usage is reset after immediate reporting and usage monitoring continued so that the subsequent usage report will have the usage since the current report. In earlier releases the behavior was to accumulate the so far usage in the next report.

• Release 12.2 onwards, usage reporting on bearer termination can be added. When a bearer is deleted due to some reason, the rules associated with the bearer will also be removed. So, the usage will be reported on the monitoring key(s) whose associated rule is the last one that is removed because of bearer termination.

• Revalidation Timeout: In the non-standard implementation, if usage monitoring and reporting is enabled and a revalidation timeout occurs, the PCEF sends a CCR to request PCC rules and reports all accumulated usage for all enabled monitoring keys since the last report (or since usage reporting was enabled if the usage was not yet reported) with the accumulated usage at IP-CAN session level (if enabled) and at service data flow level (if enabled) This is the default behavior.

In the case of standard implementation, this must be enabled by CLI configuration.

---

**Important**

The Usage Reporting on Revalidation Timeout feature is available by default in non-standard implementation of Volume Reporting over Gx. In 10.2 and later releases, this is configurable in the standard implementation. This is not supported in 10.0 release for standard based volume reporting.

Once the usage is reported, the usage counter is reset to zero. The PCEF continues to track data usage from the zero value after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new
usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session and and the usage accumulated between the CCR-CCA will be discarded.

In releases prior to 17.0, CCR-U triggered on server retries does not take server granted quota into account for reporting USU. In 17.0 and later releases, CCR-U triggered on server retries takes server granted quota into account for reporting USU. For newly created MSCC, interim quota configuration is taken as reference for reporting USU.

For information on how to configure the Volume Reporting over Gx feature, see the Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx, on page 66 section.

ICSR Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)

In releases prior to 15.0, post the ICSR switchover, any existing session for which the PCRF has enabled volume reporting used to continue indefinitely until the session is terminated or until CCR-U is sent for a given trigger, without having the volume counted via Gx.

To summarize, after an ICSR switchover, volume reporting over Gx is no longer done for existing sessions. Also, volume usage is not synced to standby chassis.

In 15.0 and later releases, volume threshold and volume usage are synced to standby chassis to support volume reporting over Gx for existing sessions post switchover.

Without this support it cannot cause a subscriber to use higher speeds than what s/he is supposed to get, if volume reporting is for example used to enforce fair usage; the operator may already consider this a revenue loss. It will also severely impact roaming subscribers who are supposed to get a notification and be blocked/redirected once the limits set by the EU roaming regulation are reached. If a session continues now without being blocked, the operator is not allowed to charge for data beyond the limit and will have a significant and real revenue loss (roaming partner may still charge for the data used on their SGSNs).

3GPP Rel.9 Compliance for IPFilterRule

This section describes the overview and implementation of 3GPP Rel.9 Compliance for IPFilterRule feature.

Feature Description

Currently, PCEF is 3GPP Rel. 8 compliant for IPFilterRule in Flow-Description AVP, TFT-Filter, and Packet-Filter-Content AVPs. When PCRF sends the CCA-U or RAR with Flow-Description AVP in Rel. 9 format during a network initiated dedicated bearer creation or modification, PCEF was misinterpreting the source and destination IP address, resulting in sending a wrong TFT to UE.

To make the PCEF 3GPP Rel. 9 compliant for Flow-Description AVP, TFT-Filter, and Packet-Filter-Content AVPs, the following changes are implemented:

• Interpretation of the source and destination IP address in IPFilterRule in Flow-Description AVP is changed to maintain 3GPP Rel.9 compliancy. That is, when a Rel. 9 Flow-Description for UPLINK is received during a network-initiated bearer creation or modification, the source IP address is interpreted as remote and the destination as local IP address.

• Traffic flow direction is interpreted from a new Diameter AVP "Flow-Direction". This new AVP indicates the direction or directions that a filter is applicable, downlink only, uplink only or both downlink and uplink (bi-directional).

Backward compatibility is maintained, i.e. both Rel. 8 (permit in/out) and Rel. 9 (permit out with flow-direction) formats are accepted by PCEF.
Per the 3GPP Rel. 8 standards, the IPFilterRule in Flow-Description, TFT-Filter, and Packet-Filter-Content AVPs is sent as "permit in" for UPLINK and "permit out" for DOWNLINK direction. From 3GPP Rel. 9 onwards, the Flow-Description AVP within the Flow-Information AVP will have only "permit out" and the traffic flow direction is indicated through Flow-Direction AVP. In 3GPP Rel. 9 format, both UPLINK and DOWNLINK are always sent as "permit out" and hence the usage of "permit in" is deprecated.

**Important**  
This feature is applicable for 3GPP Rel. 9 compliant PCEF and PCRF only when the supported feature negotiated in CCA-I is Rel. 9 or above through the `diameter update-dictionary-avps {3gpp-r9 | 3gpp-r10}` CLI command.

---

**Rel. 10 Gx Interface**

Rel. 10 Gx interface support is available on the Cisco ASR chassis running StarOS 15.0 and later releases.

This section describes the following topic:

- P-GW Rel. 10 Gx Interface Support, on page 97

**P-GW Rel. 10 Gx Interface Support**

**Introduction**

The Gx reference point is located between the Policy and Charging Rules Function (PCRF) and the Policy and Charging Enforcement Function (PCEF) on the Packet Data Network (PDN) Gateway (P-GW). The Gx reference point is used for provisioning and removal of PCC rules from the PCRF to the PCEF and the transmission of traffic plane events from the PCEF to the PCRF. The Gx reference point can be used for charging control, policy control, or both, by applying AVPs relevant to the application.

The PCEF is the functional element that encompasses policy enforcement and flow based charging functionality. This functional entity is located at the P-GW. The main functions include:

- Control over the user plane traffic handling at the gateway and its QoS.
- Service data flow detection and counting, as well as online and offline charging interactions.
- For a service data flow that is under policy control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if the corresponding gate is open.
- For a service data flow that is under charging control, the PCEF allows the service data flow to pass through the gateway if and only if there is a corresponding active PCC rule and, for online charging, the OCS has authorized the applicable credit with that charging key.
- If requested by the PCRF, the PCEF will report to the PCRF when the status of the related service data flow changes.
- In case the SDF is tunnelled at the BBERF, the PCEF informs the PCRF about the mobility protocol tunnelling header of the service data flows at IP-CAN session establishment.
ASR5K supports only eight flow information including the flow description per dynamic charging rule in a Gx message.

### Terminology and Definitions

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to Rel. 10 Gx functionality.

### Volume Reporting Over Gx

This section describes the 3GPP Rel. 10 Volume Reporting over Gx feature.

#### License Requirements

The Volume Reporting over Gx is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

In 12.0 and later releases, no separate license is required for Charging over Gx / Volume Reporting over Gx feature. This feature can be enabled as part of "Policy Interface" license.

#### Supported Standards

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature is based on the following standard:


#### Feature Overview

The Volume Reporting over Gx feature provides PCRF the capability to make real-time decisions based on the data usage by subscribers.

Volume Reporting over Gx is applicable only for volume quota.

In release 10.0, only total data usage reporting is supported, uplink/downlink level reporting is not supported. In 10.2 and later releases, it is supported.

The PCEF only reports the accumulated usage since the last report for usage monitoring and not from the beginning.

If the usage threshold is set to zero (infinite threshold), no further threshold events will be generated by PCEF, but monitoring of usage will continue and be reported at the end of the session.

In 12.2 and later releases, usage reporting on bearer termination is supported.

The following steps explain how Volume Reporting over Gx works:

1. PCEF after receiving the message from PCRF parses the usage monitoring related AVPs, and sends the information to IMSA.
2 IMSA updates the information to ECS.
3 Once the ECS is updated with the usage monitoring information from PCRF, the PCEF (ECS) starts tracking the data usage.
4 For session-level monitoring, the ECS maintains the amount of data usage.
5 For PCC rule monitoring, usage is monitored with the monitoring key as the unique identifier. Each node maintains the usage information per monitoring key. When the data traffic is passed, the usage is checked against the usage threshold values and reported as described in the Usage Reporting section.
6 The PCEF continues to track data usage after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.

**Usage Monitoring**

- Usage Monitoring at Session Level: PCRF subscribes to the session-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to SESSION_LEVEL(0). After the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present. In 11.0 and later releases, Monitoring Key at session level is supported.

In 12.0 and later releases, enabling and disabling session usage in a single message from PCRF is supported. This is supported only if the monitoring key is associated at session level.

In 12.0 and later releases, monitoring of usage based on input/output octet threshold levels is supported. Usage is reported based on the enabled threshold level. If multiple levels are enabled, usage will be reported on all the enabled levels even if only one of the levels is breached. Monitoring will be stopped on the missing threshold levels in the response for the usage report from PCRF (expected to provide the complete set again if PCRF wants to continue monitoring on the multiple levels enabled earlier).

Total threshold level along with UL/DL threshold level in the GSU AVP is treated as an error and only total threshold level is accepted.

In releases prior to 17.0, extra CCR-U was generated for a monitoring key when the following requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key.

- immediate reporting request with monitoring key at rule level
- immediate reporting request with or without monitoring key at session level
- explicit disable request at rule level
- explicit disable request at session level

In 17.0 and later releases, extra CCR-U is not generated for a monitoring key when all the above mentioned requests are received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for the same monitoring key. Also, extra CCR-U is not generated when immediate reporting request without monitoring key at rule level is received in the response to the CCR-U which reported the usage for all the active monitoring keys.

- Usage Monitoring at Flow Level: PCRF subscribes to the flow-level volume reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to PCC_RULE_LEVEL(1). Monitoring Key is mandatory in case of a flow-level monitoring since the rules are associated with the monitoring...
key and enabling/disabling of usage monitoring at flow level can be controlled by PCRF using it. After
the AVPs are parsed by DPCA, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage
monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

Usage monitoring is supported for static, predefined rules, and dynamic rule definitions.

- Usage Monitoring for Static Rules: In the case of static rules, the usage reporting on last rule
  removal associated with the monitoring key is not applicable. In this case only the usage monitoring
  information is received from the PCRF.

- Usage Monitoring for Predefined Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for the
  predefined rules, PCRF sends the rule and the usage monitoring information containing the
  monitoring key and the usage threshold. The Monitoring key should be same as the one
  pre-configured in PCEF for that predefined rule. There can be multiple rules associated with the
  same monitoring key. Hence enabling a particular monitoring key would result in the data being
  tracked for multiple rules having the same monitoring key. After DPCA parses the AVPs IMSA
  updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated usage monitoring is started and constantly
  checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is present.

- Usage Monitoring for Dynamic Rules: If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for dynamic
  ruledefs, PCRF provides the monitoring key along with a charging rule definition and the usage
  monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. This would result
  in the usage monitoring being done for all the rules associated with that monitoring key. After
  DPCA parses the AVPs, IMSA updates the information to ECS. Once ECS is updated, the usage
  monitoring is started and constantly checked with the usage threshold whenever the data traffic is
  present. Monitoring key for dynamic ruledef is dynamically assigned by PCRF which is the only
  difference with predefined rules in case of usage monitoring.

In releases prior to 15.0, when threshold breach happens for multiple monitoring keys at the same time, only
one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported and the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported in CCR-T
(threshold set to infinity). On Tx expiry/TCP link error, unreported usage is stored at ECS and reported only
on session termination.

In 15.0 and later releases, only one of the monitoring keys' usage is reported first. Upon receiving successful
response from PCRF, the rest of the monitoring keys' usage is reported to PCRF. On Tx expiry/TCP link error,
unreported usage is stored at ECS. Any future successful interaction with PCRF for the session will send
unreported UMI to PCRF.

*Usage Reporting*

Usage at subscriber/flow level is reported to PCRF under the following conditions:

- Usage Threshold Reached: PCEF records the subscriber data usage and checks if the usage threshold
  provided by PCRF is reached. This is done for both session and rule level reporting.

  For session-level reporting, the actual usage volume is compared with the usage volume threshold.

  For rule-level reporting the rule that hits the data traffic is used to find out if the monitoring key is
  associated with it, and based on the monitoring key the data usage is checked. Once the condition is
  met, it reports the usage information to IMSA and continues monitoring. IMSA then triggers the CCR-U
  if "USAGE_REPORT" trigger is enabled by the PCRF. The Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP is sent
  in this CCR with the "Used-Service-Unit" set to the amount of data usage by subscriber.

  If PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold in the usage monitoring information as a result of CCR
  from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no usage
  status is reported.
In the non-standard Volume Reporting over Gx implementation, usage monitoring will be stopped once the threshold is breached, else the monitoring will continue. There will be no further usage reporting until the CCA is received.

• **Usage Monitoring Disabled:** If the PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring with Usage-Monitoring-Support AVP set to USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED, the PCEF stops monitoring and reports the usage information (when the monitoring was enabled) to PCRF if the usage monitoring is disabled by PCRF as a result of CCR from PCEF which is not related to reporting usage, other external triggers, or a PCRF internal trigger. If the PCRF does not provide a new usage threshold as a result of CCR from PCEF when the usage threshold is reached, the usage monitoring is stopped at PCEF and no further usage status is reported.

• **IP CAN Session Termination:** When the IP CAN session is terminated, the accumulated subscriber usage information is reported to PCRF in the CCR-T from PCEF. If PCC usage level information is enabled by PCRF, the PCC usage will also be reported. PCRF uses RAR message and includes Session-Release-Cause AVP in it to initiate IP CAN Session Termination. However, there are some scenarios where PCRF may want to terminate the IP CAN Session in CCA messages. In order to avoid an unnecessary additional message, PCRF can inform P-GW to terminate the subscriber in CCA-U message itself. Hence, in 17.0 and later releases, the Session Release Cause has been added in CCA messages for all Gx dictionaries.

• **PCC Rule Removal:** When the PCRF deactivates the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key, the PCEF sends a CCR with the data usage for that monitoring key. If the PCEF reports the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key is inactive, the PCEF reports the accumulated usage for that monitoring key within the same CCR command if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in a CCR command; otherwise, if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in an RAA command, the PCEF sends a new CCR command to report accumulated usage for the usage monitoring key. In 12.0 and later releases, usage reporting on last rule deactivation using rule deactivation time set by PCRF is supported.

Releases prior to 14.0, when PCC rule was tried to be removed while waiting for access side update bearer response, the charging rules were not removed. In 14.0 and later releases, on receiving message from PCRF, the rule that is meant for removal is marked and then after the access side procedure is complete the rule is removed.

• **PCRF Requested Usage Report:** In 10.2 and later releases, the accumulated usage since the last report is sent even in case of immediate reporting, the usage is reset after immediate reporting and usage monitoring continued so that the subsequent usage report will have the usage since the current report. In earlier releases the behavior was to accumulate the so far usage in the next report.

• **Release 12.2 onwards,** usage reporting on bearer termination can be added. When a bearer is deleted due to some reason, the rules associated with the bearer will also be removed. So, the usage will be reported on the monitoring key(s) whose associated rule is the last one that is removed because of bearer termination.

• **Revalidation Timeout:** In the non-standard implementation, if usage monitoring and reporting is enabled and a revalidation timeout occurs, the PCEF sends a CCR to request PCC rules and reports all accumulated usage for all enabled monitoring keys since the last report (or since usage reporting was enabled if the usage was not yet reported) with the accumulated usage at IP-CAN session level (if enabled) and at service data flow level (if enabled) This is the default behavior.

In the case of standard implementation, this must be enabled by CLI configuration.
The Usage Reporting on Revalidation Timeout feature is available by default in non-standard implementation of Volume Reporting over Gx. In 10.2 and later releases, this is configurable in the standard implementation. This is not supported in 10.0 release for standard based volume reporting.

Once the usage is reported, the usage counter is reset to zero. The PCEF continues to track data usage from the zero value after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session and and the usage accumulated between the CCR-CCA will be discarded.

In releases prior to 17.0, CCR-U triggered on server retries does not take server granted quota into account for reporting USU. In 17.0 and later releases, CCR-U triggered on server retries takes server granted quota into account for reporting USU. For newly created MSCC, interim quota configuration is taken as reference for reporting USU.

For information on how to configure the Volume Reporting over Gx feature, refer to Configuring Volume Reporting over Gx, on page 66.

ICSRI Support for Volume Reporting over Gx (VoRoGx)

In releases prior to 15.0, post the ICSR switchover, any existing session for which the PCRF has enabled volume reporting used to continue indefinitely until the session is terminated or until CCR-U is sent for a given trigger, without having the volume counted via Gx.

To summarize, after an ICSR switchover, volume reporting over Gx is no longer done for existing sessions. Also, volume usage is not synced to standby chassis.

In 15.0 and later releases, volume threshold and volume usage are synced to standby chassis to support volume reporting over Gx for existing sessions post switchover.

Without this support it cannot cause a subscriber to use higher speeds than what s/he is supposed to get, if volume reporting is for example used to enforce fair usage; the operator may already consider this a revenue loss. It will also severely impact roaming subscribers who are supposed to get a notification and be blocked/redirected once the limits set by the EU roaming regulation are reached. If a session continues now without being blocked, the operator is not allowed to charge for data beyond the limit and will have a significant and real revenue loss (roaming partner may still charge for the data used on their SGSNs).

Use of the Supported-Features AVP on the Gx Interface

The Supported-Features AVP is used during session establishment to inform the destination host about the required and optional features that the origin host supports. The client will, in the first request in a Diameter session indicate the set of features required for the successful processing of the session. If there are features supported by the client that are not advertised as part of the required set of features, the client will provide in the same request this set of optional features that are optional for the successful processing of the session. The server will, in the first answer within the Diameter session indicate the set of features that it has in common with the client and that the server will support within the same Diameter session. Any further command messages will always be compliant with the list of supported features indicated in the Supported-Features AVPs and features that are not indicated in the Supported-Features AVPs during session establishment. Features that are not advertised as supported will not be used to construct the command messages for that Diameter session. Unless otherwise stated, the use of the Supported-Features AVP on the Gx reference point will be compliant with the requirements for dynamic discovery of supported features and associated error handling.
The base functionality for the Gx reference point is the 3GPP Rel. 7 standard and a feature is an extension to that functionality. If the origin host does not support any features beyond the base functionality, the Supported-Features AVP may be absent from the Gx commands. As defined in 3GPP TS 29.229, when extending the application by adding new AVPs for a feature, the new AVPs will have the M bit cleared and the AVP will not be defined mandatory in the command ABNF.

The Supported-Features AVP is of type grouped and contains the Vendor-Id, Feature-List-ID and Feature-List AVPs. On the Gx reference point, the Supported-Features AVP is used to identify features that have been defined by 3GPP and hence, the Vendor-Id AVP will contain the vendor ID of 3GPP (10415). If there are multiple feature lists defined for the Gx reference point, the Feature-List-ID AVP will differentiate those lists from one another.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature bit</th>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>M/O</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>Rel8</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>This feature indicates the support of base 3GPP Rel-8 Gx functionality, including the AVPs and corresponding procedures supported by the base 3GPP Rel-7 Gx standard, but excluding those features represented by separate feature bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Rel9</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>This feature indicates the support of base 3GPP Rel-9 Gx functionality, including the AVPs and corresponding procedures supported by the Rel8 feature bit, but excluding those features represented by separate feature bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Rel10</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>This feature indicates the support of base 3GPP Rel-10 Gx functionality, including the AVPs and corresponding procedures supported by the Rel8 and Rel9 feature bit, but excluding those features represented by separate feature bits.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>SponsoredConnectivity</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>This feature indicates support for sponsored data connectivity feature. If the PCEF supports this feature, the PCRF may authorize sponsored data connectivity to the subscriber.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In releases prior to 15.0, the Supported-Features AVP was not encoded in CCR-U messages, but it was supported only in CCR-I message. If Rel. 8 dictionary or any dictionary beyond Rel. 8 is used and PCRF does not provide Supported-Features AVP in CCA-I, then the call gets dropped.

In 15.0 and later releases, if PCEF configures Diameter dictionary as release 8, 9 or 10, then PCRF sends Supported-Features AVP so that PCEF will know what feature PCRF supports. If PCEF receives supported features lesser than or greater than requested features then supported feature will be mapped to the lower one.

Whenever the custom dictionary "dpca-custom24" is configured, the Supported-Features AVP including Vendor-Id AVP will be sent in all CCR messages.

**Rule-Failure-Code AVP**

The Rule-Failure-Code AVP indicates the reason that the QoS/PCC rules cannot be successfully installed/activated or enforced. The Rule-Failure-Code AVP is of type Enumerated. It is sent by the PCEF to the PCRF within a Charging-Rule-Report AVP to identify the reason a PCC Rule is being reported.
In releases prior to 15.0, only 11 rule failure codes were defined as the values for this AVP. In 15.0 and later releases, two new rule failure codes INCORRECT_FLOW_INFORMATION (12) and NO_BEARER_BOUND (15) are added. The name of the existing rule failure code 9 is changed to MISSING_FLOW_INFORMATION. For 3GPP Rel. 10, rule failure code 9 maps to GW/PCEF_MALFUNCTION.

**Sponsored Data Connectivity**

With Sponsored Data Connectivity, the sponsor has a business relationship with the operator and the sponsor reimburses the operator for the user's data connectivity in order to allow the user access to an associated Application Service Provider's (ASP) services. Alternatively, the user pays for the connectivity with a transaction which is separate from the subscriber's charging. It is assumed the user already has a subscription with the operator.

Sponsored Data Connectivity feature is introduced in Rel. 10 of 3GPP TS 29.212 specification. If Sponsored Data Connectivity is supported, the sponsor identity for a PCC rule identifies the 3rd party organization (the sponsor) who is willing to pay for the operator's charge for connectivity required to deliver a service to the end user.

The purpose of this feature is to identify the data consumption for a certain set of flows differently and charge it to sponsor. To support this, a new reporting level "SPONSORED_CONNECTIVITY_LEVEL" is added for reporting at Sponsor Connection level and two new AVPs "Sponsor-Identity" and "Application-Service-Provider-Identity" have been introduced at the rule level.

Sponsored Data Connectivity will be performed for service data flows associated with one or more PCC rules if the information about the sponsor, the application service provider and optionally the threshold values are provided by the Application Function (AF).

The provisioning of sponsored data connectivity per PCC rule will be performed using the PCC rule provisioning procedure. The sponsor identity will be set using the Sponsor-Identity AVP within the Charging-Rule-Definition AVP of the PCC rule. The application service provider identity will be set using the Application-Service-Provider-Identity AVP within the Charging-Rule-Definition AVP of the PCC rule. Sponsor-Identity AVP and Application-Service-Provider-Identity AVP will be included if the Reporting-Level AVP is set to the value SPONSORED_CONNECTIVITY_LEVEL.

When receiving the flow based usage thresholds from the AF, the PCRF will use the sponsor identity to generate a monitoring key. The PCRF may also request usage monitoring control, in this case, only the flow based usage is applied for the sponsored data connectivity. If requested, the PCEF may also report the usage to the PCRF.

A new CLI command "diameter encode-supported-features" has been added in Policy Control Configuration mode to send supported features with Sponsor Identity. For more information on the command, see the Command Line Interface Reference.

Sponsored connectivity feature will be supported only when both P-GW and PCRF support 3GPP Rel. 10. P-GW advertises release as a part of supported features in CCR-I to PCRF. If P-GW supports Release 10 and also sponsored connectivity but PCRF does not support it (as a part of supported features in CCA-I), this feature will be turned off.

This feature implementation impacts only the Gx dictionary "dpca-custom15". Also note that this feature is supported only for the dynamic rules.

**Volume Reporting**

For Volume Reporting over Gx, PCRF generates a unique monitoring key based on sponsor identity. Since flows with different monitoring keys are treated differently, flows with sponsor ID are charged differently.
Supported Gx Features

Assume Positive for Gx

In a scenario where both the primary and secondary PCRF servers are overloaded, the PCRF returns an error to P-GW and HSGW. Current behavior for the P-GW and HSGW is to terminate the session if both primary and secondary return a failure or timeout.

This feature is developed to enhance this behavior by applying local policy on the GW to ensure that the subscriber session continues. P-GW / HSGW should implement Assume Positive feature to handle errors and based on the event type implement specific rules.

Important

Use of Gx Assume Positive requires that a valid license key be installed. Contact your Cisco account representative for information on how to obtain a license.

The failure handling behavior is enhanced to ensure that the subscriber service is maintained in case of PCRF unavailability. It is also required that the GW reduces the traffic towards the PCRF when receiving a Diameter Too Busy (3004) by stopping the transmission and reception of Diameter messages (CCRs and RARs) to and from the PCRF for a configurable amount of time.

In case of any of the following failures with PCRF, the GW chooses to apply failure handling which results in subscriber termination or to allow browsing without any more policy enforcement.

- TCP link failure
- Application Timer (Tx) expiry
- Result code based failures

In 14.1 and later releases, the PCRF is allowed to fall back to Local Policy for all connection level failures, result code/experimental result code failures. Local Policy may choose to allow the subscriber for a configured amount of time. During this time any subscriber/internal event on the call would be handled from Local Policy. After the expiry of the timer, the subscriber session can be either terminated or else PCRF can be retried. Note that the retry attempt to PCRF happens only when the timer-expiry event is configured as reconnect-to-server.

The fallback support is added to the failure handling template and the local policy service needs to be associated to IMS Authorization service.

Once the local policy is applied, all PCRF enabled event triggers will be disabled. When the subscriber session is with the local-policy, the GW skips sending of CCR-T and cleans up the session locally.

For a session that was created with active Gx session, the GW sends the CCR-T to primary and on failure sends the CCR-T to the secondary PCRF. If the CCR-T returns a failure from both primary and secondary or times out, the GW cleans up the session locally.

Fallback to Local Policy is done in the following scenarios:

- Tx timer expiry
- Diabase Error
- Result Code Error (Permanent/Transient)
• Experimental Result Code
• Response Timeout

The following points are applicable only in the scenario where reconnect to PCRF is attempted.

• If the subscriber falls back to local-policy because of CCR-I failure, CCR-I will be sent to the PCRF after the timer expiry. On successful CCA-I call will be continued with PCRF or else the call will be continued with local-policy and retry-count will be incremented.

• If the subscriber falls back to local-policy because of the CCR-U failure, IMS Authorization application waits for some event change to happen or to receive an RAR from PCRF.

• In case of event change after the timer expiry, CCR-U will be sent to PCRF. On successful CCA-U message, call will be continued with PCRF or else call will be with local-policy and retry-count will be incremented.

• If RAR is received after the timer-expiry the call will be continued with the PCRF. On expiry of maximum of retries to connect to PCRF, call will be disconnected.

**Default Policy on CCR-I Failure**

The following parameters are supported for local configuration on P-GW. The configuration parameters are configurable per APN and per RAT Type.

The following fields for a Default Bearer Charging Rule are configurable per APN and per RAT Type:

• Rule Name
• Rating Group
• Service ID
• Online Charging
• Offline Charging
• QCI
• ARP
  • Priority Level
  • QCI
  • QVI

• Max-Requested-Bandwidth
  • UL
  • DL

Flow Description and Flow Status are not configurable but the default value will be set to Any to Any and Flow Status will be set to Enabled.

The following command level fields are configurable per APN and per RAT Type:

• AMBR
Gx Back off Functionality

This scenario is applicable when Primary PCRF cluster is unavailable but the secondary PCRF is available to handle new CCR-I messages.

When the chassis receives 3004 result-code then back-off timer will be started for the peer and when the timer is running no messages will be sent to that peer.

The timer will be started only when the value is being configured under endpoint configuration.

Releases prior to 15.0, when the IP CAN session falls back to local policy it remained with local policy until the termination timer expires or the subscriber disconnects. Also, the RAR message received when the local-policy timer was running got rejected with the cause "Unknown Session ID".

In 15.0 and later releases, P-GW/GGSN provides a fair chance for the subscriber to reconnect with PCRF in the event of CCR failure. To support this feature, configurable validity and peer backoff timers are introduced in the Local Policy Service and Diameter endpoint configuration commands. Also, the RAR received when the local-policy timer is running will be rejected with the cause "DIAMETER_UNABLE_TO_DELIVER".

In releases prior to 17.0, rule report was not sent in the CCR messages when PCRF is retried after the expiry of validity timer. In 17.0 and later releases, rule report will be sent to the PCRF during reconnect when the CLI command diameter encodeevent-avps local-fallback is configured under Policy Control Configuration mode.

Support for Volume Reporting in Local Policy

This feature provides support for time based reconnect to PCRF instead of the event based for CCR-U failure scenarios.

In releases prior to 17.0, the following behaviors were observed with respect to the Volume Reporting for Local Policy:

- In the event of CCR-U failure, CCR-U was triggered to PCRF only on receiving subscriber event.
- When a CCR-U failure happened and a call continued without Gx, unreported volume is lost as the threshold is set to infinity. In next CCR-U triggered to PCRF, the cumulative volume was sent to PCRF.
- RAR was rejected with result-code diameter_unable_to_comply (3002) when the validity timer is running.

In 17.0 and later releases, with the timer-based implementation, this feature introduces the following changes to the existing behavior:
• When send-usage-report is configured, the CCR-U with usage report will be sent immediately after the local-policy timer-expiry.

• The unreported usage will not be returned to ECS. Thus, usage since last tried CCR-U will be sent to PCRF.

• RAR will be accepted and the rules received on RAR will be installed even when the timer is running.

Session can be connected to PCRF immediately instead of waiting for subscriber event, and the updated usage report can be sent.

**Support for Session Recovery and Session Synchronization**

Currently PCRF and ASR5K gateway node are in sync during normal scenarios and when Gx assume positive is not applied. However, there are potential scenarios where the PCRF might have been locally deleted or lost the Gx session information and it is also possible that due to the loss of message, gateway node and PCRF can be out of sync on the session state.

While these are rare conditions in the network, the desired behavior is to have PCRF recover the Gx session when it is lost and also to have PCRF and gateway sync the rule and session information. This feature provides functionality to ensure PCRF and gateway can sync on session information and recover any lost Gx sessions. Configuration support has been provided to enable session recovery and session sync features.

In releases prior to 17.0, the implementation is as follows:

• If the PCRF deletes or loses session information during a Gx session update (CCR-U) initiated by the gateway, PCRF will respond back with DIAMETER_UNKNOWN_SESSION_ID resulting in session termination even in the case of CCR-U.

• If the PCRF deletes or loses session information and an Rx message is received, PCRF will not be able to implement corresponding rules and will result in failure of subscriber voice or video calls.

• For subscriber's existing Rx sessions and active voice/video calls, PCRF will not be able to initiate cleanup of the sessions towards the gateway and can result in wastage of the resources in the network (dedicated bearers not removed) or can result in subscriber not able to place calls on hold or conference or remove calls from hold.

• For out of sync scenarios, PCRF and gateway could be implementing different policies and can result in wastage of resources or in poor subscriber experience. Existing behavior does not provide for a way to sync the entire session information.

In 17.0 and later releases, the gateway (GW) node and PCRF now supports the ability to exchange session information and the GW provides the complete subscriber session information to enable PCRF to build the session state. This will prevent the occurrence of the above mentioned scenarios and ensure that GW and PCRF are always in sync. The keywords **session-recovery** and **session-sync** are used with the **diameter encode-supported-features** CLI command in Policy Control Configuration mode to support Gx Synchronization.
Configuring Gx Assume Positive Feature

To configure Gx Assume Positive functionality:

**Step 1**
At the global configuration level, configure Local Policy service for subscribers as described in the Configuring Local Policy Service at Global Configuration Level, on page 109.

**Step 2**
At the global configuration level, configure the failure handling template to use the Local Policy service as described in the Configuring Failure Handling Template at Global Configuration Level, on page 110.

**Step 3**
Within the IMS Authorization service, associate local policy service and failure handling template as described in the Associating Local Policy Service and Failure Handling Template, on page 110.

**Step 4**
Verify your configuration as described in the Verifying Local Policy Service Configuration, on page 110.

**Step 5**
Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command `save configuration`. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Important**
Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for complete information regarding all commands.

---

### Configuring Local Policy Service at Global Configuration Level

Use the following example to configure Local Policy Service at global configuration level for subscribers:

```
configure
local-policy-service LOCAL_PCC
  ruledef 2G_RULE
    condition priority 1 apn match .*
    exit
  ruledef all-plmn
    condition priority 1 serving-plmn match .*
    exit
  actiondef 2G_UPDATE
    action priority 1 activate-ambr uplink 18000 downlink 18000
    exit
  actiondef action1
    action priority 2 allow-requested-qos
    exit
  actiondef allow
    action priority 1 allow-session
    exit
  actiondef delete
    action priority 1 terminate-session
    exit
  actiondef lp_fall
    action priority 1 reconnect-to-server
    exit
  actiondef time
```
action priority 1 start-timer timer duration 10
exit
eventbase default
rule priority 1 event fallback ruledef 2G_RULE actiondef time continue
rule priority 2 event new-call ruledef 2G_RULE actiondef action1
rule priority 3 event location-change ruledef 2G RULE actiondef action1
rule priority 5 event timer-expiry ruledef 2G RULE actiondef lp_fall
rule priority 6 event request-qos default-qos-change ruledef 2G RULE actiondef allow
end

Notes:
• On occurrence of some event, event will be first matched based on the priority under the eventbase
default. For the matched rule and if the corresponding ruledef satisfies, then specific action will be taken.

Configuring Failure Handling Template at Global Configuration Level
Use the following example to configure failure handling template at global configuration level:
configure
failure-handling-template <template_name>
  msg-type any failure-type any action continue local-fallback
end

Notes:
• When the TCP link failure, Application Timer (Tx) expiry, or Result code based failure happens, the
  associated failure-handling will be considered and if the failure-handling action is configured as
  local-fallback, then call will fall back to local-fallback mode.

Associating Local Policy Service and Failure Handling Template
Use the following example to associate local policy service and failure handling template:
configure
context <context_name>
  ims-auth-service <service_name>
    associate local-policy-service <lp_service_name>
    associate failure-handling <failure-handling-template-name>
end

Verifying Local Policy Service Configuration
To verify the local policy service configuration, use this command:
show local-policy statistics service service_name

Time Reporting Over Gx
This section describes the Time Reporting over Gx feature supported for GGSN in this release.
License Requirements

No separate license is required for Time Reporting over Gx feature. This feature can be enabled as part of "Policy Interface" license.

Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Feature Overview

This non-standard Time Usage Reporting over Gx feature is similar to Volume Usage Reporting over Gx. PCRF provides the time usage threshold for entire session or particular monitoring key in CCA or RAR. When the given threshold breached usage report will be sent to PCRF in CCR. This time threshold is independent of data traffic. Apart from the usage threshold breach there are other scenarios where usage report will be send to PCRF.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Time reporting over Gx is applicable only for time quota.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The PCEF only reports the accumulated time usage since the last report for time monitoring and not from the beginning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If the time usage threshold is set to zero (infinite threshold), no further threshold events will be generated by PCEF, but monitoring of usage will continue and be reported at the end of the session.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time usage reporting on bearer termination is supported. When a bearer is deleted due to some reason, the rules associated with the bearer will also be removed. So, the usage will be reported on the monitoring key(s) whose associated rule is the last one that is removed because of bearer termination.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following steps explain how Time Reporting over Gx works:

1. PCEF after receiving the message from PCRF parses the time monitoring related AVPs, and sends the information to IMSA.
2. IMSA updates the information to ECS.
3. Once the ECS is updated with the time monitoring information from PCRF, the PCEF (ECS) starts tracking the time usage.
4. For session-level monitoring, the ECS maintains the amount of time usage.
5. For PCC rule monitoring, usage is monitored with the monitoring key as the unique identifier. Each node maintains the time usage information per monitoring key.
6. The PCEF continues to track time usage after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then time monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.

Limitations

This section lists the limitations for Time Reporting over Gx in this release.
• Only integer monitoring key will be supported like Volume Reporting over Gx

• If the same monitoring key is used for both time and data volume monitoring then disabling monitoring key will disable both time and data usage monitoring.

• If the same monitoring key is used for both time and data usage monitoring and if an immediate report request is received, then both time and volume report of that monitoring key will be sent.

Usage Monitoring

Two levels of time usage reporting are supported:

• Usage Monitoring at Session Level
• Usage Monitoring at Flow Level

Usage Monitoring at Session Level

PCRF subscribes to the session level time reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to SESSION_LEVEL (0).

Usage Monitoring at Flow Level

PCRF subscribes to the flow level time reporting over Gx by sending the Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP with the usage threshold level set in Granted-Service-Unit AVP and Usage-Monitoring-Level AVP set to PCC_RULE_LEVEL (1). Monitoring Key is mandatory in case of a flow level monitoring since the rules are associated with the monitoring key and enabling or disabling of usage monitoring at flow level can be controlled by PCRF using it. Usage monitoring is supported for both predefined rules and dynamic rule definition.

Usage Monitoring for Predefined and Static Rules

If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for the predefined rules, PCRF sends the rule and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. The monitoring key should be same as the one pre-configured in PCEF for that predefined rule. There can be multiple rules associated with the same monitoring key. Hence enabling a particular monitoring key would result in the time being tracked for multiple rules having the same monitoring key. Similarly, usage monitoring information is sent from PCRF for the static rules also.

Usage Monitoring for Dynamic Ruledefs

If the usage monitoring needs to be enabled for dynamic ruledefs, PCRF provides the monitoring key along with a charging rule definition and the usage monitoring information containing the monitoring key and the usage threshold. This results in the usage monitoring being done for all the rules associated with that monitoring key.

Usage Reporting

Time usage at subscriber/flow level is reported to PCRF under the following conditions:

• Usage Threshold Reached: PCEF records the subscriber usage and checks if the usage threshold provided by PCRF is reached. Once the condition is met, it reports the usage information to IMSA and continues monitoring. IMSA then triggers the CCR-U if "USAGE_REPORT" trigger is enabled by PCRF. The
Usage-Monitoring-Information AVP is sent in this CCR with the "CC-Time" in "Used-Service-Unit" set to track the time usage of the subscriber.

- Usage Monitoring Disabled: If PCRF explicitly disables the usage monitoring with Usage-Monitoring-Support AVP set to USAGE_MONITORING_DISABLED, PCEF stops monitoring and reports the usage information (when the monitoring was enabled) to PCRF if the usage monitoring is disabled by PCRF as a result of CCR from PCEF which is not related to reporting usage, other external triggers, or a PCRF internal trigger.

- IP CAN Session Termination: When the IP CAN session is terminated, the accumulated subscriber usage information is reported to PCRF in the CCR-T from PCEF.

  PCRF uses RAR message and includes Session-Release-Cause AVP in it to initiate IP CAN Session Termination. However, there are some scenarios where PCRF may want to terminate the IP CAN Session in CCA messages. In order to avoid an unnecessary additional message, PCRF can inform P-GW to terminate the subscriber in CCA-U message itself. Hence, in 17.0 and later releases, the Session Release Cause has been added in CCA messages for all Gx dictionaries.

- PCC Rule Removal: When the PCRF deactivates the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key, PCEF sends a CCR with the usage time for that monitoring key. If the PCEF reports the last PCC rule associated with a usage monitoring key is inactive, the PCEF reports the accumulated usage for that monitoring key within the same CCR command if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in a CCR command; otherwise, if the Charging-Rule-Report AVP was included in an RAA command, the PCEF sends a new CCR command to report accumulated usage for the usage monitoring key.

- PCRF Requested Usage Report: When PCRF provides the Usage-Monitoring-Information with the Usage-Monitoring-Report set to USAGE_MONITORING_REPORT_REQUIRED, PCEF sends the time usage information. If the monitoring key is provided by PCRF, time usage for that monitoring key is notified to PCRF regardless of usage threshold. If the monitoring key is not provided by PCRF, time usage for all enabled monitoring keys is notified to PCRF.

- Event Based Reporting: The event based reporting can be enabled through the CLI command event-update send-usage-report events. When an event like sgsn change, qos change or revalidation-timeout is configured under this CLI, time usage report is generated whenever that event happens.

Once the usage is reported, the usage counter is reset to zero. The PCEF continues to track time usage from the zero value after the threshold is reached and before a new threshold is provided by the PCRF. If a new usage threshold is not provided by the PCRF in the acknowledgement of an IP-CAN Session modification where its usage was reported, then time usage monitoring does not continue in the PCEF for that IP CAN session.

For information on how to configure the Time Reporting over Gx feature, see the Configuring Time Reporting over Gx, on page 113.

### Configuring Time Reporting over Gx

This section describes the configuration required to enable Time Reporting over Gx.

To enable Time Reporting over Gx, use the following configuration:

```bash
configure
    active-charging-service <ecs_service_name>
    rulebase <rulebase_name>
        action priority <priority> dynamic-only ruledef <ruledef_name> charging-action <charging_action_name> monitoring-key <monitoring_key>
```
Support for Multiple Active and Standby Gx Interfaces to PCRF

In the earlier Gx implementation, Diameter Policy Control Application has the limitation to mandatorily configure hosts as part of IMS Authorization service or associate a host template and select the hosts to be communicated for each subscriber session. Since the peer selection can happen at diabase and application need not select any hosts, this feature is developed to remove the restrictions imposed in the application and allow diabase to pick the peers in a round robin fashion. In addition, this feature will take care of peer selection at diabase even when the hosts picked by application are not active. This change in behavior is controlled through the CLI command "endpoint-peer-select" as the default behavior is to drop the call if the server discovery fails at application.

When the call is established, IMSA module checks the host selection table/prefix table/host template associated in IMSA service to pick the primary and secondary peers to be contacted. If no host table/prefix table/host template is configured or none of the rows in prefix table are matching or the hosts selected by IMSA are inactive, then based on the CLI configuration the control is given to diabase module which will select the peers in a round robin fashion or terminate the call based on the CLI configuration.

When the CCR message results in a diabase error/Tx expiry/response timeout, then IMSA will let diabase select an alternate route by excluding the peer which resulted in the failure and switch to the peer if the lookup is successful.

When CCR/CCA message is exchanged with the directly connected host selected by diabase and RAR message is received from new host, then IMSA will skip host configuration check and let further communication to happen with the new host. If the directly connected host is selected by application during call establishment, then IMSA will check if the new host is the secondary server per application. When the CCR/CCA message is exchanged with indirectly connected host through DRA which is picked by diabase and RAR message is received from same host through another DRA, then IMSA will skip host configuration check and let further communication to happen with the same host through the new DRA. If the DRA is selected by application during call establishment, then IMSA will check if the new DRA is the secondary server per application. Even if RAR message is received from different host though another DRA, IMSA will skip host configuration check and let further communication to happen with the new host through the new DRA.
Configuring Diameter Peer Selection at Diabase in Failure Scenarios

The following configuration enables diabase to select the Diameter peers when IMSA fails.

```
configure
  context context_name
    ims-auth-service service_name
      policy-control
        endpoint-peer-select [ on-host-select-failure | on-inactive-host ]
        { default | no } endpoint-peer-select
  end
```

Notes:

- This command is used to perform server selection at diabase when the hosts could not be selected by IMS Authorization application or when the hosts selected by the IMS Authorization application is inactive. For example, host table is not configured in IMSA service, host table is configured but not activated, none of the rows in prefix table match the subscriber, host template is not associated with IMSA service, host template could not select the hosts.

- **on-host-select-failure**: Specifies to perform server selection at Diabase when the hosts could not be selected by IMS Authorization application.

- **on-inactive-host**: Specifies to perform server selection at diabase when the hosts selected by application are inactive.

- This CLI command is added in policy control configuration mode to maintain backward compatibility with the old behavior of terminating the call when server selection fails at IMS Authorization application.

Support for Multiple CCR-Us over Gx Interface

ASR5K node earlier supported only one pending CCR-U message per session over Gx interface. Any request to trigger CCR-U (for access side updates/internal updates) were ignored/dropped, when there was already an outstanding message pending at the node. PCEF and PCRF were out of synch if CCR-U for critical update was dropped (like RAT change/ULI change).

In 17.0 and later releases, ASR5K supports multiple CCR-U messages at a time per session through the use of a configurable CLI command "max-outstanding-ccr-u" under IMS Authorization Service configuration mode. That is, this CLI will allow the user to configure a value of up to 12 as the maximum number of CCR-U messages per session.

The CLI-based implementation allows sending request messages as and when they are triggered and processing the response when they are received. The gateway does re-ordering if the response messages are received out of sequence.

To support multiple outstanding messages towards PCRF, the following items should be supported:

- Allowing IMSA to send multiple CCR-U messages – This can be achieved through the use of `max-outstanding-ccr-u` command in the IMS Authorization Service configuration mode.

- Queuing of response message for ordering – DPCA should parse the received message irrespective of order in which they are received. IMSA will check whether to forward the response to session manager or queue it locally.
• Peer switch – When multiple CCR-U's are triggered, IMSA will start Tx timer for each request sent out. On first Tx expiry, IMSA/DPCA will do peer switch. That is, IMSA will stop all other requests' Tx timers and switch to secondary peer (if available) or take appropriate failure handling action.

• Failure handling – On peer switch failure due to Tx expiry, DPCA will take failure handling action based on the configuration present under ims-auth-service.

• Handling back pressure – In case of multiple CCR-U's triggered to Primary PCRF and due to Tx timeout all the messages are switched to Secondary PCRF. If Secondary server is already in backpressure state, then IMSA will put first message in the backpressure queue and once after message is processed next pending request will be put into BP queue.

• Volume reporting – In case of multiple CCR-U's for usage report is triggered (for different monitoring keys) and failure handling is configured as "continue send-ccrt-on-call-termination", on first Tx timeout or response timeout, usage report present in all the CCR-U's will be sent to ECS. All the unreported usage will be sent in CCR-T message when the subscriber goes down. If "event-update send-usage-report" CLI is present, then there are chances of reporting usage for same monitoring key in multiple CCR-U's.

Though the max-outstanding-ccr-u CLI command supports configuring more than one CCR-U, only one outstanding CCR-U for access side update is sent out at a time and multiple CCR-U's for internal updates are sent.

These are the access side updates for which CCR-U might be triggered:

• Bearer Resource Command
• Modify Bearer Request (S-GW change, RAT change, ULI change)
• Modify Bearer Command

These are the following internal updates for which CCR-U is triggered:

• S-GW restoration
• Bearer going down (GGSN, BCM UE_Only)
• ULI/Timezone notification
• Default EPS bearer QoS failure
• APN AMBR failure
• Charging-Rule-Report
• Out of credit / reallocation of credit
• Usage reporting
• Tethering flow detection
• Access network charging identifier

Configuring Gateway Node to Support Back-to-Back CCR-U's

The following configuration enables or disables the gateway to send multiple back-to-back CCR-U's to PCRF.

```
configure
c   context  context_name
```
Support for RAN/NAS Cause IE on Gx Interface

New supported feature "Netloc-RAN-NAS-Cause" has been introduced to be in compliance with the Release 12 specification of 3GPP TS 29.212. This feature is used to send detailed RAN and/or NAS release cause code information from the access network to PCRF. It requires that the NetLoc feature is also supported.

Important

This feature can be enabled only when the NetLoc feature license is installed.

A new Diameter AVP "RAN-NAS-Release-Cause" will be included in the Charging-Rule-Report AVP and in CCR-T for bearer and session deletion events respectively, when the NetLoc-RAN-NAS-Cause supported feature is enabled. This AVP will indicate the cause code for the subscriber/bearer termination.

Configuring Supported Feature Netloc-RAN-NAS-Cause

The following configuration enables the supported feature "Netloc-RAN-NAS-Cause".

```
configure
c    context context_name
    ims-auth-service service_name
    policy-control
diameter encode-supported-features netloc-ran-nas-cause
end
```

Notes:

- netloc-ran-nas-cause: Enables the Netloc-RAN-NAS-Cause feature. By default, this supported feature will be disabled.
- If the supported features "netloc-ran-nas-code" and "netloc" are enabled, then netloc-ran-nas-cause code will be sent to PCRF.

To disable this supported feature, use the following command:

```
| default | no | diameter encode-supported-features
```

Support ADC Rules over Gx Interface

In this release, P-GW will use Application Detection and Control (ADC) functionality over Gx as defined in the Release 11 specification of 3GPP standard.

ADC extension over Gx provides the functionality to notify PCRF about the start and stop of a specific protocol or a group of protocols, and provide the possibility to PCRF that with the knowledge of this information, change the QoS of the user when the usage of application is started and until it is finished.
The provision of ADC information is done through the ADC rule, the action initiated by PCRF is done through the PCC rule.

ADC rules are certain extensions to dynamic and predefined PCC rules in order to support specification, detection and reporting of an application flow. These rules are installed (modified/removed) by PCRF via CCA-I/CCA-U/RAR events. ADC rules can be either dynamic PCC or predefined PCC rules, and the existing attributes of dynamic and predefined rules will be applicable.

Dynamic PCC rule contains either traffic flow filters or Application ID. When Application ID is present, the rule is treated as ADC rule. Application ID is the name of the rule which is pre-defined in the boxer configuration. This ruledef contains application filters that define the application supported by P2P protocols.

PCEF will process and install ADC rules that are received from PCRF interface, and will detect the specified applications and report detection of application traffic to the PCRF. PCRF in turn controls the reporting of application traffic.

PCEF monitors the specified applications that are enabled by PCRF and generates Start/Stop events along with the Application ID. Such application detection is performed independent of the bearer on which the ADC PCC rule is bound to. For instance, if ADC rule is installed on a dedicated bearer whereas the ADC traffic is received on default bearer, application detection unit still reports the start event to PCRF.

Important

ADC Rule support is a licensed-controlled feature. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements.

In support of this feature, the following Diameter AVPs are newly added to the Charging-Rule-Definition AVP, which PCEF will receive from PCRF.

- TDF-Application-Identifier It references the application detection filter which the PCC rule for application detection and control in the PCEF applies. The TDF-Application-Identifier AVP references also the application in the reporting to the PCRF.

- Redirect-Information This indicates whether the detected application traffic should be redirected to another controlled address.

- Mute-Notification This AVP is used to mute the notification to the PCRF of the detected application's start/stop for the specific ADC/PCC rule from the PCEF.

- Application Detection Information If Mute-Notification AVP is not enclosed with charging rule report and APPLICATION.START/APPLICATION_STOP event trigger is enabled then PCEF will send Application-Detection-Information to PCRF corresponding TDF-Application-Identifier.

In addition, these two new event triggers "APPLICATION_START" and "APPLICATION_STOP" are generated for reporting purpose.

Limitations

The limitations for the ADC over Gx feature are:

- ADC does not support group of ruledefs.
- Registration of the duplicate application IDs are not supported.
- Readdress/Redirection for P2P flows will not be supported.
- Redirection happens only on transactions of GET/Response.
Port based, IP Protocol based, and URL based applications are not supported.

Pre-configured options (precedence, redirect-server-ip) for dynamic ADC rules are not supported.

Simultaneous instances of an application for the same subscriber are not distinguished.

Flow recovery is not supported for application flows.

Configuring ADC Rules over Gx

The following configuration enables ADC rules over Gx interface.

```
configure
  context context_name
    ims-auth-service service_name
      policy-control
        diameter encode-supported-features adc-rules
    end
```

Notes:

- The keyword "adc-rules" will be available only when the feature-specific license is configured.
- For ADC 6th bit of supported feature will be set.

To disable the support for ADC Rules over Gx, use the following command:
```
[default|no] diameter encode-supported-features
```

Support for TAI and ECGI Change Reporting

This section describes the overview and implementation of TAI and ECGI Change Reporting feature.

This section discusses the following topics for this feature:

- Feature Description, on page 119
- How it Works, on page 120
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting the TAI and ECGI Change Reporting Feature, on page 121

Feature Description

For activating User Location Reporting for a UE over Gx, PCRF sends RAR/CCA with the "USER_LOCATION_CHANGE (13)" event trigger. On receiving this event trigger, P-GW typically sends Change Reporting Action (CRA) Information Element (IE) with "Start Reporting" towards MME to enable the Location-Change reporting for the UE in MME.

In the current architecture, the "USER_LOCATION_CHANGE (13)" trigger is used to report the changes in User Location Information (ULI), Tracking Area Identity (TAI) and E-UTRAN Cell Global Identifier (ECGI). In release 19.4 and beyond, separate event triggers TAI_CHANGE (26) and ECGI_CHANGE (27) are supported for reporting the changes in TAI and ECGI correspondingly. CLI changes are done to display the new event triggers in show configuration commands.
For TAI reporting to work, the **diameter map usage-report** CLI command must be configured in Policy Control configuration mode to use the value 33.

PCRF subscribes to the CRA event for reporting change of TAI and ECGI. P-GW sends event trigger in CCR-U only if it is subscribed by PCRF. When PCRF installs the event trigger for ECGI Change and/or TAI change, any change in ECGI and TAI (based on installed triggers) is reported.

The TAI and ECGI Change Reporting feature complies with 3GPP TS 29.212 v9.7.0. This feature is supported on Gx interface so that UE can be tracked on ECGI/TAI change and reported to PCRF. For more information on the User Location Information Reporting feature, see the administration guide for the product that you are deploying.

In releases prior to 19.3, the CRA event included in Create Session Response (CSRsp) for reporting location change was always set to `START_REPORTING_ECGI` (4).

In release 19.4 and beyond, the CRA value varies based on the event triggers received from PCRF.

Change Reporting Support Indication (CRSI) and ULI are also supported in Bearer Resource Command. P-GW sends the ULI received in Delete Bearer Command from MME to PCRF when the corresponding Delete Bearer Response is received. When the ULI is included in both Delete Bearer Command and Delete Bearer Response, the ULI in Delete Bearer Response is sent to the PCRF. In the absence of ULI in Delete Bearer Response, then the ULI received in Delete Bearer Command is sent to PCRF.

**Relationships to Other Features**

This feature has a dependency on `USAGE_REPORT` value of Event-Trigger AVP. This feature works only when the value of `USAGE_REPORT` is set to 33. This can be achieved using the **diameter map usage-report** CLI command in Policy Control configuration mode.

**How it Works**

P-GW sends Event Trigger value based on the event trigger detected by P-GW in CCR-U. P-GW sends Event Trigger and ULI Type in CCR-U to PCRF as per the following table.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Event Trigger from PCRF</th>
<th>CRA Value</th>
<th>Event Detected at P-GW</th>
<th>What to Inform PCRF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| ULI_CHANGE              | 6         | TAI_CHANGE or ECGI_CHANGE | Event Trigger: ULI_CHANGE  
                          |            |                        | ULI Type: TAI + ECGI |
| TAI_CHANGE              | 3         | TAI_CHANGE              | Event Trigger: TAI_CHANGE  
                          |            |                        | ULI Type: TAI |
| ECGI_CHANGE             | 4         | ECGI_CHANGE              | Event Trigger: ECGI_CHANGE  
                          |            |                        | ULI Type: ECGI |
### Limitations

TAI and ECGI Change Reporting feature is supported only when *diameter map usage-report* CLI command is configured as 33.

### Monitoring and Troubleshooting the TAI and ECGI Change Reporting Feature

This section provides information regarding show commands and/or their outputs in support of the TAI and ECGI Change Reporting feature.

**show ims-authorization sessions full all**

The following fields are added to the output of this show command in support of this feature:

- **TAI-Change** - Displays this event trigger when TAI has changed for a subscriber session.
- **ECGI-Change** - Displays this event trigger when ECGI has changed for a subscriber session.

**show ims-authorization service statistics all**

The following statistics are added to the output of this show command in support of this feature:

- **TAI Change** - Displays the total number of times P-GW has reported TAI_CHANGE (26) event trigger to PCRF.
Location Based Local-Policy Rule Enforcement

This section describes the overview and implementation of Location-based Local-Policy (LP) Rule Enforcement feature.

This section discusses the following topics for this feature:

- Feature Description, on page 122
- How it Works, on page 123
- Configuring Location Based Local Policy Rule Enforcement Feature, on page 124
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Location Based LP Rule Enforcement Feature, on page 126

Feature Description

This feature is introduced to activate different predefined rules for different E-UTRAN Cell Global Identifiers (ECGs) when the subscriber is connected to a corporate APN. The subscriber has to explicitly bring down the connection with the corporate APN and re-establish session with Internet APN when out of the company area. It is assumed that corporate APN does not use PCRF and use only Local-Policy. In this case, all calls matching the APN is directed to the Local-Policy.

To activate different predefined rules for ECGI, Local-Policy configurations are enhanced to support:

- Configuration and validation of a set of ECGIs
- Installation of ECGI_CHANGE event trigger through Change Reporting Action (CRA) event
- Detection of ECGI_CHANGE event

This feature supports the following actions to be applied based on the ECGI match with Local-Policy ruledef condition:

- Enable a redirect rule on ECGI_CHANGE event notification when the ECGI belongs to a certain group
- Enable a wild card rule for any other ECGIs

Relationships to Other Features

This feature has a dependency on TAI and ECGI Change Reporting feature, which provides a framework to report ECGI-Change from session manager module to IMSA/Local-Policy module.
How it Works

This section describes how the Local Policy Rule selection and enforcement happens based on ECGI-CHANGE event trigger.

Flows

The following figure describes how the ECGI-CHANGE event is being handled in Local-Policy, MME and P-GW.

*Figure 14: ECGI-CHANGE Event Handling*

When a new call is established the ECGI-CHANGE event trigger is sent from Local-Policy. P-GW requests the MME for ECGI reporting by sending CRA of 4 in Create Session Response (CSRsp). MME informs the P-GW of ECGI Change through Change Notification request/Modify Bearer Request (MBReq). Local-Policy configuration at P-GW will handle the ECGI-CHANGE event and take appropriate action based on the ECGI group to which the new ECGI belongs. One action could be to activate a certain redirect rule when ECGI belongs to a certain group, and other action could be to enable a wildcard rule for any other ECGI.
Limitations
This section identifies the known limitations of this feature.

• ECGI Change detection and triggering is a pre-requisite for this feature.

• This feature is supported for Local-Policy-only (lp-only) mode wherein, all requests and responses within a particular APN directly go to Local-Policy without contacting PCRF. That is, this feature does not work in Local-Policy fallback mode and dual mode wherein both PCRF and Local-Policy co-exist.

Configuring Location Based Local Policy Rule Enforcement Feature
This section provides the configuration of parameters within Local-Policy to enable rule enforcement based on ECGI-Change event notification.

Configuring ECGI Change Trigger
Use the following configuration to install ECGI-Change trigger from local-policy.

```
configure
local-policy-service service_name
actiondef actiondef_name
   action priority priority event-triggers egci-change
exit
eventbase default
   rule priority priority event new-call ruledef ruledef_name actiondef actiondef_name [ continue ]
end
```

Notes:

• priority priority: Specifies a priority for the specified action. priority must be unique and an integer from 1 to 2048.

• egci-change: This keyword specifies to install ECGI-CHANGE event trigger. If enabled, ECGI-CHANGE event trigger is sent from local-policy.

• This CLI command is configured in local-policy if operator wants to enable ECGI-Change notification in MME by sending a CRA value.

Applying Rules for ECGI-Change Event
Use the following configuration to enable ECGI Change detection and take specific action for ECGI-CHANGE event reported by MME.

```
configure
local-policy-service service_name
   eventbase eventbase_name
   rule priority priority event egci-change ruledef ruledef_name actiondef actiondef_name [ continue ]
end
```

Notes:

• priority priority: Specifies a priority for the specified rule. priority must be unique and an integer from 1 to 2048.

• ruledef ruledef_name: Associates the rule with a specific ruledef. ruledef_name must be an existing ruledef within this local QoS policy service.
• **actiondef** *actiondef_name*: Associates the rule with a specific actiondef. *actiondef_name* must be an existing actiondef within this local QoS policy service expressed as an alphanumeric string of 1 through 63 characters.

• **ecgi-change**: Enables a new event to detect ECGI-CHANGE and applies specific action for the ECGI-CHANGE event as defined in actiondef configuration.

• **continue**: Subsequent rules are also matched; otherwise, rule evaluation is terminated on first match.

### Enforcing Local Policy Rule based on ECGI Value

Use the following configuration to apply rules based on the ECGI value received in ECGI-Change event notification by MME.

```plaintext
configure
  local-policy-service service_name
  ruledef ruledef_name
    condition priority priority ecgi mcc mcc_num mnc mnc_num eci {eq | ge | gt | le | lt | match | ne | nomatch } regex | string_value | int_value | set
  end
```

**Notes:**

• **priority** *priority*: Specifies a priority for the specified condition. *priority* must be unique and an integer from 1 to 2048.

• **ecgi mcc mcc_num mnc mnc_num eci**: Configures ECGI with values for MCC, MNC and ECI.
  - *mcc mcc_num*: MCC is a three digit number between 001 to 999. It is a string of size 3 to 3.
  - *mnc mnc_num*: MNC is a two/three digit number between 01 to 999. It is a string of size 2 to 3.
  - *eci*: ECI is a hexadecimal number between 0x1 to 0xfffffff. It is a string of size 1 to 7.

• This CLI command is configured in local-policy if operator wants to take specific action based on certain ECGI value received in ECGI-Change event notification by MME.

### Verifying the Location Based LP Rule Enforcement Configuration

Use the following command to verify the configuration of this feature.

```plaintext
show configuration context
```

**Important** This feature is supported for Local-Policy-only mode wherein, all requests and responses within a particular APN directly go to Local-Policy without contacting PCRF.

Here is an example configuration for this feature.

```plaintext
configure
  context source
    apn corporate-apn
    ims-auth-service LocalPolicy_1
  exit
  exit
configure
  local-policy-service LocalPolicy_1
```
Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Location Based LP Rule Enforcement Feature

This section provides information regarding show commands and/or their outputs in support of the Location Based Local Policy Rule Enforcement feature.

Use the following CLI commands to troubleshoot if any issue is encountered with this feature.

- `show configuration context`
- `logging filter active facility local-policy level debug`
- `show local-policy statistics`
- `show active-charging sessions full`

**show local-policy statistics summary**

The following statistics are added to the output of this show command to support the ECGI-CHANGE event trigger installation:

- Event Statistics:
  - ECGI Change - Displays the number of ECGI-CHANGE event triggers that has been received by Local-Policy.

- Variable Matching Statistics
  - ECGI - Displays the number of times the ECGI is matched and the specific action is applied based on the event.

Gx Support for GTP based S2a/S2b

In releases prior to 18, for WiFi integration in P-GW, Gx support was already available for GTP based S2a/S2, but the implementation was specific to a particular customer.
In 18 and later releases, the Gx support for GTP based S2a/S2 interface is extended to all customers. This implementation is in compliance with standard Rel.8 Non-3GPP specification part of 29.212, along with C3-101419 C3-110338 C3-110225 C3-120852 C3-130321 C3-131222 CRs from Rel.10/Rel.11.

As part of this enhancement, the following changes are introduced:

- AVP support for TWAN ID is provided
- TWAN-ID is added to r8-gx-standard dictionary

### Gx-based Virtual APN Selection

This section describes the overview and implementation of Gx based Virtual APN Selection feature. This section discusses the following topics for this feature:

- Feature Description, on page 127
- Configuring Gx based Virtual APN Selection Feature, on page 128
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Gx based Virtual APN Selection, on page 128

#### Feature Description

**Overview**

The current implementation supports Virtual APN (VAPN) Selection through RADIUS or local configuration. In Release 19, ASR5K uses PCRF and Gx interface for Virtual APN selection to achieve signaling reduction.

A new supported feature "virtual-apn" with feature bit set to 4 is added to the IMSA configuration. This configuration enables Gx based Virtual APN Selection feature for a given IMS authorization service. When this configuration is enabled at P-GW/GGSN, then P-GW/GGSN advertises this feature to PCRF through the Supported-Features AVP in CCR-I. When the VAPN is selected, then the PCRF rejects the CCR-I message with the Experimental-Result-Code AVP set to 5999 (DIAMETER_GX_APN_CHANGE), and sends a new APN through the Called-Station-Id AVP in CCA-I message. The existing call is then disconnected and reestablished with the new virtual APN. Note that the Experimental Result Code 5999 will have the Cisco Vendor ID.

**Important**

Enabling this feature might have CPU impact (depending on the number of calls using this feature).

#### License Requirements

This feature requires a valid license to be installed prior to configuring this feature. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.
Limitations

The following are the limitations of this feature:

- Virtual APN supported feature negotiation, Experimental Result Code (5999), Called-Station-Id AVP should be received to establish the call with new virtual APN. When any one of conditions is not met then the call will be terminated.
- Failure-handling will not be taken into account for 5999 result-code when received in the CCA-I message.
- When the Experimental Result Code 5999 is received in the CCA-U then failure-handling action will be taken.
- If the Called-Station-Id AVP is received in CCA-U or CCA-T, then the AVP will be ignored.
- If virtual-apn is received in local-policy initiated initial message then the call will be terminated.
- When PCRF repeatedly sends the same virtual-apn, then the call will be terminated.

Configuring Gx based Virtual APN Selection Feature

The following section provides the configuration commands to enable the Gx based Virtual APN Selection.

```
configure
c   context context_name
     ims-auth-service service_name
     policy-control
d       diameter encode-supported-features virtual-apn
     end
```

Notes:

- `virtual-apn`: This keyword enables configuration of Gx-based Virtual APN Selection feature. By default, this feature is disabled.
- This keyword is license dependent. For more information, contact your Cisco account representative.

Verifying the Gx based Virtual APN Configuration

Use the following command in Exec mode to display whether the Gx based Virtual APN Selection feature is configured as part of the Supported-Features AVP.

```
show ims-authorization sessions full all
```

The "Negotiated Supported Features" field in this show command output displays the configuration status. This supported feature is displayed only when the feature license is configured.

Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Gx based Virtual APN Selection

This section provides information regarding show commands and/or their outputs in support of this feature.

```
show ims-authorization policy-control statistics
```

The following field has been added to the output of this show command to track the number of times the PCRF sends the Diameter Experimental Result Code (5999) when a new virtual APN is selected.
• Gx APN Change

For descriptions of this statistics, see the *Statistics and Counters Reference* guide.

**Debugging Statistics**

Use the following command to debug the Gx based Virtual APN calls.

```sh
show session subsystem facility sessmgr debug-info
```

This command displays the detailed statistics associated with the Gx-based VAPN feature. For example, number of Gx VAPN received, number of AAAMGR/SGX/DHCP messages after enabling Gx VAPN, and Gx VAPN calls setup time.

**Bulk Statistics for Gx based Virtual APN Selection Feature**

**IMSA Schema**

The following new bulk statistic variable is added to the IMSA schema to track the number of times the PCRF sends the Diameter Experimental Result Code (5999) when a new virtual APN is selected.

• `dpca-expres-gx-apn-change`

For descriptions of this variable, see the *Statistics and Counters Reference* guide.

**System Schema**

The following new disconnect reason is added to the System schema to track the number of times a P-GW/GGSN/SAEGW session was disconnected due to validation failure of virtual APN received from PCRF.

• `gx-vapn-selection-failed (618)`

For descriptions of this variable, see the *Statistics and Counters Reference* guide.
Gy Interface Support

This chapter provides an overview of the Gy interface and describes how to configure the Gy interface. Gy interface support is available on the Cisco system running StarOS 9.0 or later releases for the following products:

- GGSN
- HA
- IPSG
- PDSN
- P-GW

It is recommended that before using the procedures in this chapter you select the configuration example that best meets your service model, and configure the required elements for that model as described in the administration guide for the product that you are deploying.

- Introduction, page 131
- Features and Terminology, page 133
- Configuring Gy Interface Support, page 166

Introduction

The Gy interface is the online charging interface between the PCEF/GW (Charging Trigger Function (CTF)) and the Online Charging System (Charging-Data-Function (CDF)).

The Gy interface makes use of the Active Charging Service (ACS) / Enhanced Charging Service (ECS) for real-time content-based charging of data services. It is based on the 3GPP standards and relies on quota allocation. The Online Charging System (OCS) is the Diameter Credit Control server, which provides the online charging data to the PCEF/GW. With Gy, customer traffic can be gated and billed in an online or prepaid style. Both time- and volume-based charging models are supported. In these models differentiated rates can be applied to different services based on ECS shallow- or deep-packet inspection.

In the simplest possible installation, the system will exchange Gy Diameter messages over Diameter TCP links between itself and one prepay server. For a more robust installation, multiple servers would be used. These servers may optionally share or mirror a single quota database so as to support Gy session failover from
one server to the other. For a more scalable installation, a layer of proxies or other Diameter agents can be introduced to provide features such as multi-path message routing or message and session redirection features.

The following figure shows the Gy reference point in the policy and charging architecture.

**Figure 15: PCC Logical Architecture**

![Figure 15: PCC Logical Architecture](image)

The following figure shows the Gy interface between CTF/Gateway/PCEF/Client running ECS and OCS (CDF/Server). Within the PCEF/GW, the Gy protocol functionality is handled in the DCCA module (at the ECS).

**Figure 16: Gy Architecture**

![Figure 16: Gy Architecture](image)
License Requirements

The Gy interface support is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements. For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Supported Standards

Gy interface support is based on the following standards:

- IETF RFC 4006: Diameter Credit Control Application; August 2005
- 3GPP TS 32.299 V9.6.0 (2010-12) 3rd Generation Partnership Project; Technical Specification Group Services and System Aspects; Telecommunication management; Charging management; Diameter charging applications (Release 9)

Features and Terminology

This section describes features and terminology pertaining to Gy functionality.

Charging Scenarios

Important

Online charging for events ("Immediate Event Charging" and "Event Charging with Reservation") is not supported. Only "Session Charging with Reservation" is supported.

Session Charging with Reservation

Session Charging with Unit Reservation is used for credit control of sessions.

Decentralized Unit Determination and Centralized Rating

In this scenario, the CTF requests the reservation of units prior to session supervision. An account debit operation is carried out following the conclusion of session termination.

Centralized Unit Determination and Centralized Rating

In this scenario, the CTF requests the OCS to reserve units based on the session identifiers specified by the CTF. An account debit operation is carried out following the conclusion of session.
Decentralized Unit Determination and Decentralized Rating

Important: Decentralized Rating is not supported in this release. Decentralized Unit determination is done using CLI configuration.

In this scenario, the CTF requests the OCS to assure the reservation of an amount of the specified number of monetary units from the subscriber's account. An account debit operation that triggers the deduction of the amount from the subscriber's account is carried out following the conclusion of session establishment.

Basic Operations

Important: Immediate Event Charging is not supported in this release. "Reserve Units Request" and "Reserve Units Response" are done for Session Charging and not for Event Charging.

Online credit control uses the basic logical operations "Debit Units" and "Reserve Units". 

• Debit Units Request; sent from CTF to OCS: After receiving a service request from the subscriber, the CTF sends a Debit Units Request to the OCS. The CTF may either specify a service identifier (centralised unit determination) or the number of units requested (decentralised unit determination). For refund purpose, the CTF sends a Debit Units Request to the OCS as well.

• Debit Units Response; sent from OCS to CTF: The OCS replies with a Debit Units Response, which informs the CTF of the number of units granted as a result of the Debit Units Request. This includes the case where the number of units granted indicates the permission to render the requested service. For refund purpose, the OCS replies with a Debit Units Response.

• Reserve Units Request; sent from CTF to OCS: Request to reserve a number of units for the service to be provided by an CTF. In case of centralised unit determination, the CTF specifies a service identifier in the Reserve Unit Request, and the OCS determines the number of units requested. In case of decentralised unit determination, the number of units requested is specified by the CTF.

• Reserve Units Response; sent from OCS to CTF: Response from the OCS which informs the CTF of the number of units that were reserved as a result of the "Reserve Units Request".

Session Charging with Unit Reservation (SCUR) use both the "Debit Units" and "Reserve Units" operations. SCUR uses the Session Based Credit Control procedure specified in RFC 4006. In session charging with unit reservation, when the "Debit Units" and "Reserve Units" operations are both needed, they are combined in one message.

Important: Cost-Information, Remaining-Balance, and Low-Balance-Indication AVPs are not supported.

The consumed units are deducted from the subscriber's account after service delivery. Thus, the reserved and consumed units are not necessarily the same. Using this operation, it is also possible for the CTF to modify the current reservation, including the return of previously reserved units.
Re-authorization

The server may specify an idle timeout associated with a granted quota. Alternatively, the client may have a configurable default value. The expiry of that timer triggers a re-authorization request.

Mid-session service events (re-authorisation triggers) may affect the rating of the current service usage. The server may instruct the credit control client to re-authorize the quota upon a number of different session related triggers that can affect the rating conditions.

When a re-authorization is triggered, the client reports quota usage. The reason for the quota being reported is notified to the server.

Threshold based Re-authorization Triggers

The server may optionally include an indication to the client of the remaining quota threshold that triggers a quota re-authorization.

Termination Action

The server may specify to the client the behavior on consumption of the final granted units; this is known as termination action.

Diameter Base Protocol

The Diameter Base Protocol maintains the underlying connection between the Diameter Client and the Diameter Server. The connection between the client and server is TCP based. There are a series of message exchanges to check the status of the connection and the capabilities.

• Capabilities Exchange Messages: Capabilities Exchange Messages are exchanged between the diameter peers to know the capabilities of each other and identity of each other.
  - Capabilities Exchange Request (CER): This message is sent from the client to the server to know the capabilities of the server.
  - Capabilities Exchange Answer (CEA): This message is sent from the server to the client in response to the CER message.

Important

Acct-Application-Id is not parsed and if sent will be ignored by the PCEF/GW. In case the Result-Code is not DIAMETER_SUCCESS, the connection to the peer is closed.

• Device Watchdog Request (DWR): After the CER/CEA messages are exchanged, if there is no more traffic between peers for a while, to monitor the health of the connection, DWR message is sent from the client. The Device Watchdog timer (Tw) is configurable in PCEF/GW and can vary from 6 through 30 seconds. A very low value will result in duplication of messages. The default value is 30 seconds. On two consecutive expiries of Tw without a DWA, the peer is taken to be down.
DWR is sent only after Tw expiry after the last message that came from the server. Say if there is continuous exchange of messages between the peers, DWR might not be sent if (Current Time - Last message received time from server) is less than Tw.

- **Device Watchdog Answer (DWA):** This is the response to the DWR message from the server. This is used to monitor the connection state.

- **Disconnect Peer Request (DPR):** This message is sent to the peer to inform to shutdown the connection. PCEF/GW only receives this message. There is no capability currently to send the message to the diameter server.

- **Disconnect Peer Answer (DPA):** This message is the response to the DPR request from the peer. On receiving the DPR, the peer sends DPA and puts the connection state to "DO NOT WANT TO TALK TO YOU" state and there is no way to get the connection back except for reconfiguring the peer again.

  A timeout value for retrying the disconnected peer must be provided.

- **Tw Timer Expiry Behavior:** The connection between the client and the server is taken care by the DIABASE application. When two consecutive Tw timers are expired, the peer state is set to idle and the connection is retried to be established. All the active sessions on the connection are then transferred to the secondary connection if one is configured. All new session activations are also tried on the secondary connection.

  There is a connection timeout interval, which is also equivalent to Tw timer, wherein after a CER has been sent to the server, if there is no response received while trying to reestablish connection, the connection is closed and the state set to idle.

**Diameter Credit Control Application**

The Diameter Credit Control Application (DCCA) is a part of the ECS subsystem. For every prepaid customer with Diameter Credit Control enabled, whenever a session comes up, the Diameter server is contacted and quota for the subscriber is fetched.

**Quota Behavior**

Various forms of quotas are present that can be used to charge the subscriber in an efficient way. Various quota mechanisms provide the end user with a variety of options to choose from and better handling of quotas for the service provider.

**Time Quotas**

The Credit-Control server can send the CC-Time quota for the subscriber during any of the interrogation of client with it. There are also various mechanisms as discussed below which can be used in conjunction with time quota to derive variety of methods for customer satisfaction.

- **Quota Consumption Time:** The server can optionally indicate to the client that the quota consumption must be stopped after a period equal to the "Quota Consumption Time" in which no packets are received or at session termination, whichever is sooner. The idle period equal to the Quota Consumption Time is included in the reported usage. The quota is consumed normally during gaps in traffic of duration less
than or equal to the Quota-Consumption-Time. Quota consumption resumes on receipt of a further packet belonging to the service data flow.

If packets are allowed to flow during a CCR (Update)/CCA exchange, and the Quota-Consumption-Time AVP value in the provided quota is the same as in the previously provided quota, then the Quota-Consumption-Time runs normally through this procedure. For example, if 5 seconds of a 10 second QCT timer have passed when a CCR(U) is triggered, and the CCA(U) returns 2 seconds later, then the QCT timer will expire 3 seconds after the receipt of the CCA and the remaining unaccounted 5 seconds of usage will be recorded against the new quota even though no packets were transmitted with the new quota.

A locally configurable default value in the client can be used if the server does not send the QCT in the CCA.

- Combinational Quota: Discrete-Time-Period (DTP) and Continuous-Time-Period (CTP) defines mechanisms that extends and generalize the Quota-Consumption-Time for consuming time-quota.

  - Both DTP and CTP uses a "base-time-interval" that is used to create time-envelopes of quota used.
  - Instead of consuming the quota linearly, DTP and CTP consumes the granted quota discretely in chunks of base-time-interval at the start of each base-time-interval.
  - Selection of one of this algorithm is based on the "Time-Quota-Mechanism" AVP sent by the server in CCA.
  - Reporting usage can also be controlled by Envelope-Reporting AVP sent by the server in CCA during the quota grant. Based on the value of this AVP, the usage can be reported either as the usage per envelope or as usual cumulative usage for that grant.

- Discrete-Time-Period: The base-time-interval defines the length of the Discrete-Time-Period. So each time-envelope corresponds to exactly one Discrete-Time-Period. So when a traffic is detected, an envelope of size equal to Base-Time-Interval is created. The traffic is allowed to pass through the time-envelope. Once the traffic exceeds the base-time-interval another new envelope equal to the base-time-interval is created. This continues till the quota used exceeds the quota grant or reaches the threshold limit for that quota.

- Continuous-Time-Period: Continuous time period mechanism constructs time envelope out of consecutive base-time intervals in which the traffic occurred up to and including a base time interval which contains no traffic. Therefore the quota consumption continues within the time envelope, if there was traffic in the previous base time interval. After an envelope has closed, then the quota consumption resumes only on the first traffic following the closure of the envelope. The envelope for CTP includes the last base time interval which contains no traffic.

  The size of the envelope is not constant as it was in Parking meter. The end of the envelope can only be determined retrospectively.

- Quota Hold Time: The server can specify an idle timeout associated with a granted quota using the Quota-Holding-Time AVP. If no traffic associated with the quota is observed for this time, the client understands that the traffic has stopped and the quota is returned to the server. The client starts the quota holding timer when quota consumption ceases. This is always when traffic ceases, i.e. the timer is re-started at the end of each packet. It applies equally to the granted time quota and to the granted volume quota. The timer is stopped on sending a CCR and re-initialized on receiving a CCA with the previous used value or a new value of Quota-Holding-Time if received.

  Alternatively, if this AVP is not present, a locally configurable default value in the client is used. A Quota-Holding-Time value of zero indicates that this mechanism is not used.
• Quota Validity Time: The server can optionally send the validity time for the quota during the interrogation with the client. The Validity-Time AVP is present at the MSCC level and applies equally to the entire quota that is present in that category. The quota gets invalidated at the end of the validity time and a CCR-Update is sent to the server with the Used-Service-Units AVP and the reporting reason as VALIDITY_TIME. The entire quota present in that category will be invalidated upon Quota-Validity-Time expiry and traffic in that category will be passed or dropped depending on the configuration, till a CCA-Update is received with quota for that category.

Validity-Time of zero is invalid. Validity-Time is relative and not absolute.

In releases prior to 17.0, the AVP "SN-Remaining-Service-Unit" was not sent in the CCR-T and CCR-U messages with reporting Reason FINAL when the FUI action was received as Redirect and the granted units was zero in CCA. In 17.0 and later releases, for the Final-Reporting, the AVP "SN-Remaining-Service-Unit" will be encoded.

The "SN-Remaining-Service-Unit" AVP behavior is inherited from "Used-Service-Unit" AVP. This Final-Reporting is missing for the Remaining-Service-Unit AVP, which is now incorporated.

**Volume Quota**

The server sends the CC-Total-Octets AVP to provide volume quota to the subscriber. DCCA currently supports only CC-Total-Octets AVP, which applies equally to uplink and downlink packets. If the total of uplink and downlink packets exceeds the CC-Total-Octets granted, the quota is assumed to be exhausted.

If CC-Input-Octets and/or CC-Output-Octets is provided, the quota is counted against CC-Input-Octets and/or CC-Output-Octets respectively.

---

**Important**

Restricting usages based on CC-Input-Octets and CC-Output-Octets is not supported in this release.

**Units Quota**

The server can also send a CC-Service-Specific-Units quota which is used to have packets counted as units. The number of units per packet is a configurable option.

**Granting Quota**

Gy implementation assumes that whenever the CC-Total-Octets AVP is present, volume quota has been granted for both uplink and downlink.

If the Granted-Service-Unit contains no data, Gy treats it as an invalid CCA.

If the values are zero, it is assumed that no quota was granted.

If the AVP contains the sub AVPs without any data, it is assumed to be infinite quota.

Additional parameters relating to a category like QHT, QCT is set for the category after receiving a valid volume or time grant.

If a default quota is configured for the subscriber, and subscriber traffic is received it is counted against the default quota. The default quota is applicable only to the initial request and is not regranted during the course of the session. If subscriber disconnects and reconnects, the default quota will be applied again for the initial request.
**Requesting Quota**

Quotas for a particular category type can be requested using the Requested-Service-Unit AVP in the CCR. The MSCC is filled with the Rating-Group AVP which corresponds to the category of the traffic and Requested-Service-Unit (RSU) AVP without any data.

The Requested-Service-Unit can contain the CC AVPs used for requesting specific quantity of time or volume grant. Gy CLI can be used to request quota for a category type.

Alternatively quota can also be requested from the server preemptively for a particular category in CCR-I. When the server grants preemptive quota through the Credit control answer response, the quota will be used only when traffic is hit for that category. Quota can be preemptively requested from the Credit Control server from the CLI.

In 12.3 and earlier releases, when no pre-emptive quota request is present in CCR-I, on hitting server unreachable state for initial request, MSCC AVP with RSU is present in the CCR-I on server retries. Release 14.0 onwards, the MSCC AVP is skipped in the CCR-I on server retries. Corresponding quota usage will be reported in the next CCR-U (MSCC AVP with USU and RSU).

**Reporting Quota**

Quotas are reported to the server for number of reasons including:

- Threshold
- QHT Expiry
- Quota Exhaustion
- Rating Condition Change
- Forced Reauthorization
- Validity Time Expiry
- Final during Termination of Category Instance from Server

For the above cases except for QHT and Final, the Requested-Service-Unit AVP is present in the CCR. Reporting Reason is present in CCR to let the server know the reason for the reporting of Quota. The Reporting-Reason AVP can be present either in MSCC level or at Used Service Unit (USU) level depending on whether the reason applies to all quotas or to single quota.

When one of these conditions is met, a CCR Update is sent to the server containing a Multiple-Services-Credit-Control AVP(s) indicating the reason for reporting usage in the Reporting-Reason and the appropriate value(s) for Trigger, where appropriate. Where a threshold was reached, the DCCA still has the amount of quota available to it defined by the threshold.

For all other reporting reasons the client discards any remaining quota and either discards future user traffic matching this category or allows user traffic to pass, or buffers traffic according to configuration.

For Reporting-Reason of Rating Condition Change, Gy requires the Trigger Type AVP to be present as part of the CCR to indicate which trigger event caused the reporting and re-authorization request.

For Reporting-Reason of end user service denied, this happens when a category is blacklisted by the credit control server, in this case a CCR-U is sent with used service unit even if the values as zero. When more quota is received from the server for that particular category, the blacklisting is removed.
If a default quota has been set for the subscriber then the usage from the default quota is deducted from the initial GSU received for the subscriber for the Rating Group or Rating Group and Service ID combination.

**Default Quota Handling**

- If default quota is set to 0, no data is passed/reported.
- If default quota is configured and default quota is not exhausted before OCS responds with quota, traffic is passed. Initial default quota used is counted against initial quota allocated. If quota allocated is less than the actual usage then actual usage is reported and additional quota is requested. If no additional quota is available then traffic is denied.
- If default quota is not exhausted before OCS responds with denial of quota, gateway blocks traffic after OCS response. Gateway will report usage on default quota even in this case in CCR-U (FINAL) or CCR-T.
- If default quota is consumed before OCS responds, if OCS is not declared dead (see definition in use case 1 above) then traffic is blocked until OCS responds.

**Thresholds**

The Gy client supports the following threshold types:

- Volume-Quota-Threshold
- Time-Quota-Threshold
- Units-Quota-Threshold

A threshold is always associated with a particular quota and a particular quota type. in the Multiple-Services-Credit-Control AVP, the Time-Quota-Threshold, Volume-Quota-Threshold, and Unit-Quota-Threshold are optional AVPs.

They are expressed as unsigned numbers and the units are seconds for time quota, octets for volume quota and units for service specific quota. Once the quota has reached its threshold, a request for more quotas is triggered toward the server. User traffic is still allowed to flow. There is no disruption of traffic as the user still has valid quota.

The Gy sends a CCR-U with a Multiple-Services-Credit-Control AVP containing usage reported in one or more User-Service-Unit AVPs, the Reporting-Reason set to THRESHOLD and the Requested-Service-Unit AVP without data.

When quota of more than one type has been assigned to a category, each with its own threshold, then the threshold is considered to be reached once one of the unit types has reached its threshold even if the other unit type has not been consumed.

When reporting volume quota, the DCCA always reports uplink and downlink separately using the CC-Input-Octets AVP and the CC-Output-Octets AVP, respectively.

On receipt of more quotas in the CCA the Gy discard any quota not yet consumed since sending the CCR. Thus the amount of quota now available for consumption is the new amount received less any quota that may have been consumed since last sending the CCR.
Conditions for Reauthorization of Quota

Quota is re-authorized/requested from the server in case of the following scenarios:

- Threshold is hit
- Quota is exhausted
- Validity time expiry
- Rating condition change:
  - Cellid change: Applicable only to GGSN and P-GW implementations.
  - LAC change: Applicable only to GGSN and P-GW implementations.
  - QoS change
  - RAT change
  - SGSN/Serving-Node change: Applicable only to GGSN and P-GW implementations.

Discarding or Allowing or Buffering Traffic to Flow

Whenever Gy is waiting for CCA from the server, there is a possibility of traffic for that particular traffic type to be encountered in the Gy. The behavior of what needs to be done to the packet is determined by the configuration. Based on the configuration, the traffic is either allowed to pass or discarded or buffered while waiting for CCA from the server.

This behavior applies to all interrogation of client with server in the following cases:

- No quota present for that particular category
- Validity timer expiry for that category
- Quota exhausted for that category
- Forced Reauthorization from the server

In addition to allowing or discarding user traffic, there is an option available in case of quota exhausted or no quota circumstances to buffer the traffic. This typically happens when the server has been requested for more quota, but a valid quota response has not been received from the server, in this case the user traffic is buffered and on reception of valid quota response from the server the buffered traffic is allowed to pass through.

Procedures for Consumption of Time Quota

- QCT is zero: When QCT is deactivated, the consumption is on a wall-clock basis. The consumption is continuous even if there is no packet flow.
- QCT is active: When QCT is present in the CCA or locally configured for the session, then the consumption of quota is started only at the time of first packet arrival. The quota is consumed normally till last packet arrival plus QCT time and is passed till the next packet arrival.

If the QCT value is changed during intermediate interrogations, then the new QCT comes into effect from the time the CCA is received. For instance, if the QCT is deactivated in the CCA, then quota consumptions resume normally even without any packet flow. Or if the QCT is activated from deactivation, then the quota consumption resume only after receiving the first packet after CCA.
• QHT is zero: When QHT is deactivated, the user holds the quota indefinitely in case there is no further usage (for volume quota and with QCT for time quota). QHT is active between the CCA and the next CCR.

• QHT is non-zero: When QHT is present in CCA or locally configured for the session, then after a idle time of QHT, the quota is returned to the server by sending a CCR-Update and reporting usage of the quota. On receipt of CCR-U, the server does not grant quota. QHT timer is stopped on sending the CCR and is restarted only if QHT is present in the CCA.

QHT timer is reset every time a packet arrives.

Envelope Reporting

The server may determine the need for additional detailed reports identifying start time and end times of specific activity in addition to the standard quota management. The server controls this by sending a CCA with Envelope-Reporting AVP with the appropriate values. The DCCA client, on receiving the command, will monitor for traffic for a period of time controlled by the Quota-Consumption-Time AVP and report each period as a single envelope for each Quota-Consumption-Time expiry where there was traffic. The server may request envelope reports for just time or time and volume. Reporting the quota back to the server, is controlled by Envelope AVP with Envelope-Start-Time and Envelope-End-Time along with usage information.

Credit Control Request

Credit Control Request (CCR) is the message that is sent from the client to the server to request quota and authorization. CCR is sent before the establishment of MIP session, and at the termination of the MIP session. It can be sent during service delivery to request more quotas.

• Credit Control Request - Initial (CCR-I)
• Credit Control Request - Update (CCR-U)
• Credit Control Request - Terminate (CCR-T)
• Credit Control Answer (CCA)
• Credit Control Answer - Initial (CCA-I)
• Credit Control Answer - Update (CCA-U)

If the MSCC AVP is missing in CCA-U it is treated as invalid CCA and the session is terminated.

• Credit Control Answer - Terminate (CCA-T)

In releases prior to 16.0, CCR-T was immediately sent without waiting for CCA-U if the call was cleared and there was a pending CCA-U. In 16.0 and later releases, if call is cleared when there is a pending update, the gateway will wait for CCA-U to arrive or timeout to happen (whichever happens first).
The following figure depicts the call flow for a simple call request in the GGSN/P-GW/IPSG Gy implementation.

**Figure 17: Gy Call Flow for Simple Call Request for GGSN/P-GW/IPSG**
The following figure depicts the call flow for a simple call request in the HA Gy implementation.

**Figure 18: Gy Call Flow for Simple Call Request for HA**

**Tx Timer Expiry Behavior**

A timer is started each time a CCR is sent out from the system, and the response has to arrive within Tx time. The timeout value is configurable in the Diameter Credit Control Configuration mode.

In case there is no response from the Diameter server for a particular CCR, within Tx time period, and if there is an alternate server configured, the CCR is sent to the alternate server after Tw expiry as described in "Tw Timer expiry behavior" section.

It also depends on the Credit-Control-Session-Failover AVP value for the earlier requests. If this AVP is present and is coded to FAILOVER_SUPPORTED then the credit-control message stream is moved to the secondary server, in case it is configured. If the AVP value is FAILOVER_NOT_SUPPORTED, then the call is dropped in case of failures, even if a secondary server is configured.

In releases prior to 16.0, once a CCR-U was sent out over Gy interface, ACR-I message was immediately triggered (or containers were cached) based on policy accounting configuration and did not wait for CCA-U. In 16.0 and later releases, containers are closed only after CCA-U is received successfully. That is, Rf trigger will be sent only after receiving CCA-U message.

**Redirection**

In the Final-Unit-Indication AVP, if the Final-Unit-Action is REDIRECT or Redirect-Server AVP is present at command level, redirection is performed.
The redirection takes place at the end of consumption of quota of the specified category. The Gy sends a CCR-Update without any RSU or Rating-Group AVP so that the server does not give any more quotas. If the Final-Unit-Action AVP is RESTRICT_ACCESS, then according to the settings in Restriction-Filter-Rule AVP or Filter-Id AVP, Gy sends CCR-Update to the server with used quota.

Triggers

The Diameter server can provide with the triggers for which the client should reauthorize a particular category. The triggers can be configured locally as well but whatever trigger is present in the CCA from the server will have precedence.

Important

In this release, Gy triggers are not supported for HA.

The trigger types that are supported are:

- SGSN/Serving-Node Change
- QoS Change - Any
- RAT Change
- LAC Change
- CellID Change

On any event as described in the Trigger type happens, the client reauthorizes quota with the server. The reporting reason is set as RATING_CONDITION_CHANGE.

Tariff Time Change

The tariff change mechanism applies to each category instance active at the time of the tariff change whenever the server indicated it should apply for this category.

The concept of dual coupon is supported. Here the server grants two quotas, which is accompanied by a Tariff-Time-Change, in this case the first granted service unit is used until the tariff change time, once the tariff change time is reached the usage is reported up to the point and any additional usage is not accumulated, and then the second granted service unit is used.

If the server expects a tariff change to occur within the validity time of the quota it is granting, then it includes the Tariff-Time-Change AVP in the CCA. The DCCA report usage, which straddles the change time by sending two instances of the Used-Service-Unit AVP, one with Tariff-Change-Usage set to UNIT_BEFORE_TARIFF_CHANGE, and one with Tariff-Change-Usage set to UNIT_AFTER_TARIFF_CHANGE, and this independently of the type of units used by application. Both Volume and Time quota are reported in this way.

The Tariff time change functionality can as well be done using Validity-Time AVP, where in the Validity-Time is set to Tariff Time change and the client will reauthorize and get quota at Validity-Time expiry. This will trigger a lot of reauthorize request to the server at a particular time and hence is not advised.

Tariff-Time-Usage AVP along with the Tariff-Time-Change AVP in the answer message to the client indicates that the quotas defined in Multiple-Services-Credit-Control are to be used before or after the Tariff Time change. Two separate quotas are allocated one for before Tariff-Time-Change and one for after Tariff-Time-Change. This gives the flexibility to the operators to allocate different quotas to the users for different periods of time. In this case, the DCCA should not send the Before-Usage and After-Usage counts...
in the update messages to the server. When Tariff-Time-Change AVP is present without Tariff-Time-Usage AVP in the answer message, then the quota is used as in single quota mechanism and the client has to send before usage and after usage quotas in the updates to the server.

**Important**
In this release, Gy does not support UNIT_INDETERMINATE value.

**Final Unit Indication**

The Final-Unit-Indication AVP can be present in the CCA from the server to indicate that the given quota is the final quota from the server and the corresponding action as specified in the AVP needs to be taken.

**Final Unit Indication at Command Level**

Gy currently does not support FUI AVP at command level. If this AVP is present at command level it is ignored. If the FUI AVP is present at command level and the Final-Unit-Action AVP set to TERMINATE, Gy sends a CCR-Terminate at the expiry of the quota, with all quotas in the USU AVP.

**Important**
FUI AVP at command level is only supported for Terminate action.

**Final Unit Indication at MSCC Level**

If the Final-Unit-Indication AVP is present at MSCC level, and if the Final-Unit-Action AVP is set to TERMINATE, a CCR-Update is sent at the expiry of the allotted quota and report the usage of the category that is terminated.

For information on redirection cases refer to the *Redirection, on page 144.*

**Credit Control Failure Handling**

CCFH AVP defines what needs to be done in case of failure of any type between the client and the server. The CCFH functionality can be defined in configuration but if the CCFH AVP is present in the CCA, it takes precedence. CCFH AVP gives flexibility to have different failure handling.

Gy supports the following Failure Handling options:

- TERMINATE
- CONTINUE
- RETRY AND TERMINATE

**CCFH with Failover Supported**

In case there is a secondary server is configured and if the CC-Session-Failover AVP is set to FAILOVER_SUPPORTED, the following behavior takes place:

- Terminate: On any Tx expiry for the CCR-I the message is discarded and the session is torn down. In case of CCR-Updates and Terminates the message is sent to the secondary server after response timeout and the session is proceeded with the secondary server. In case there is a failure with the secondary server too, the session is torn down.
• Continue: On any Tx expiry, the message is sent to the secondary server after response timeout and the session is proceeded with the secondary server. In case there is a failure with the secondary server too, the session is still established, but without quota management.

• Retry and Terminate: On any Tx expiry, the message is sent to the secondary server after the response timeout. In case there is a failure with secondary server too, the session is taken down.

**CCFH with Failover Not Supported**

In case there is a secondary server configured and if the CC-Session-Failover AVP is set to FAILOVER_NOT_SUPPORTED, the following behavior takes place as listed below. Same is the case if there is no secondary server configured on the system.

• Terminate: On any Tx expiry, the session is taken down.

• Continue: On any Tx expiry, the session is still established, but without quota management.

• Retry and Terminate: On any Tx expiry, the session is taken down.

**Failover Support**

The CC-Session-Failover AVP and the Credit-Control-Failure-Handling (CCFH) AVP may be returned by the CC server in the CCA-I, and are used by the DCCA to manage the failover procedure. If they are present in the CCA they override the default values that are locally configured in the system.

If the CC-Session-Failover is set to FAILOVER_NOT_SUPPORTED, a CC session will never be moved to an alternative Diameter Server.

If the value of CC-Session-Failover is set to FAILOVER_SUPPORTED, then the Gy attempts to move the CC session to the alternative server when it considers a request to have failed, i.e:

• On receipt of result code "DIAMETER_UNABLE_TO_DELIVER", "DIAMETER_TOO_BUSY", or "DIAMETER_LOOP_DETECTED".

• On expiry of the request timeout.

• On expiry of Tw without receipt of DWA, if the server is connected directly to the client.

The CCFH determines the behavior of the client in fault situations. If the Tx timer expires then based on the CCFH value the following actions are taken:

• CONTINUE: Allow the MIP session and user traffic for the relevant category or categories to continue, regardless of the interruption (delayed answer). Note that quota management of other categories is not affected.

• TERMINATE: Terminate the MIP session, which affects all categories.

• RETRY_AND_TERMINATE: Allow the MIP session and user traffic for the relevant category or categories to continue, regardless of the interruption (delayed answer). The client retries to send the CCR when it determines a failure-to-send condition and if this also fails, the MIP session is then terminated.

After the failover action has been attempted, and if there is still a failure to send or temporary error, depending on the CCFH action, the following action is taken:

• CONTINUE: Allow the MIP session to continue.

• TERMINATE: Terminate the MIP session.
• RETRY_AND_TERMINATE: Terminate the MIP session.

Recovery Mechanisms

DCCA supports a recovery mechanism that is used to recover sessions without much loss of data in case of Session Manager failures. There is a constant check pointing of Gy data at regular intervals and at important events like update, etc.

For more information on recovery mechanisms, please refer to the System Administration Guide.

Error Mechanisms

Following are supported Error Mechanisms.

Unsupported AVPs

All unsupported AVPs from the server with "M" bit set are ignored.

Invalid Answer from Server

If there is an invalid answer from the server, Gy action is dependent on the CCFH setting:

• In case of continue, the MIP session context is continued without further control from Gy.
• In case of terminate and retry-and-terminate, the MIP session is terminated and a CCR-T is sent to the diameter server.

Result Code Behavior

• DIAMETER_RATING_FAILED: On reception of this code, Gy discards all traffic for that category and does not request any more quota from the server. This is supported at the MSCC level and not at the command level.
• DIAMETER_END_USER_SERVICE_DENIED: On reception of this code, Gy temporarily blacklists the category and further traffic results in requesting new quota from the server. This is supported at the MSCC level and not at the command level.
• DIAMETER_CREDIT_LIMIT_REACHED: On reception of this code, Gy discards all traffic for that category and waits for a configured time, after which if there is traffic for the same category requests quota from the server. This is supported at the MSCC level and not at the command level.
• DIAMETER_CREDIT_CONTROL_NOT_APPLICABLE: On reception of this code, Gy allows the session to establish, but without quota management. This is supported only at the command level and not at the MSCC level.
• DIAMETER_USER_UNKNOWN: On reception of this code, DCCA does not allow the credit control session to get established, the session is terminated. This result code is supported only at the command level and not at the MSCC level.

For all other permanent/transient failures, Gy action is dependent on the CCFH setting.

Supported AVPs

The Gy functionality supports the following AVPs:

• Supported Diameter Credit Control AVPs specified in RFC 4006:
• CC-Input-Octets (AVP Code: 412):
  Gy supports this AVP only in USU.
• CC-Output-Octets (AVP Code: 414):
  Gy supports this AVP only in USU.
• CC-Request-Number (AVP Code: 415)
• CC-Request-Type (AVP Code: 416):
  Gy currently does not support EVENT_REQUEST value.
• CC-Service-Specific-Units (AVP Code: 417)
• CC-Session-Failover (AVP Code: 418)
• CC-Time (AVP Code: 420):
  Gy does not support this AVP in RSU.
• CC-Total-Octets (AVP Code: 421):
  Gy does not support this AVP in RSU.
• Credit-Control-Failure-Handling (AVP Code: 427)
• Final-Unit-Action (AVP Code: 449):
  Supported at Multiple-Services-Credit-Control grouped AVP level and not at command level.
• Final-Unit-Indication (AVP Code: 430):
  Fully supported at Multiple-Services-Credit-Control grouped AVP level and partially supported (TERMINATE) at command level.
• Granted-Service-Unit (AVP Code: 431)
• Multiple-Services-Credit-Control (AVP Code: 456)
• Multiple-Services-Indicator (AVP Code: 455)
• Rating-Group (AVP Code: 432)
• Redirect-Address-Type (AVP Code: 433):
  Gy currently supports only URL (2) value.
• Redirect-Server (AVP Code: 434)
• Redirect-Server-Address (AVP Code: 435)
• Requested-Service-Unit (AVP Code: 437)
• Result-Code (AVP Code: 268)
• Service-Context-Id (AVP Code: 461)
• Service-Identifier (AVP Code: 439)
• Subscription-Id (AVP Code: 443)
• Subscription-Id-Data (AVP Code: 444)
• Subscription-Id-Type (AVP Code: 450)
Tariff-Change-Usage (AVP Code: 452):
Gy does NOT support UNIT_INDETERMINATE (2) value.

Tariff-Time-Change (AVP Code: 451)

Used-Service-Unit (AVP Code: 446):
Gy sends only incremental counts for all the AVPs from the last CCA-U.

User-Equipment-Info (AVP Code: 458)

User-Equipment-Info-Type (AVP Code: 459):
Gy currently supports only IMEISV value.
Cisco GGSN and P-GW support IMEISV by default.

User-Equipment-Info-Value (AVP Code: 460)

Validity-Time (AVP Code: 448)

Supported 3GPP specific AVPs specified in 3GPP TS 32.299:

3GPP-Charging-Characteristics (AVP Code: 13)
3GPP-Charging-Id (AVP Code: 2)
3GPP-GGSN-MCC-MNC (AVP Code: 9)
3GPP-GPRS-QoS-Negotiated-Profile (AVP Code: 5)
3GPP-IMSI-MCC-MNC (AVP Code: 8)
3GPP-NSAPI (AVP Code: 10)
3GPP-PDP-Type (AVP Code: 3)
3GPP-RAT-Type (AVP Code: 21)
3GPP-Selection-Mode (AVP Code: 12)
3GPP-Session-Stop-Indicator (AVP Code: 11)
3GPP-SGSN-MCC-MNC (AVP Code: 18)
3GPP-User-Location-Info (AVP Code: 22)
Base-Time-Interval (AVP Code: 1265)
Charging-Rule-Base-Name (AVP Code: 1004)
Envelope (AVP Code: 1266)
Envelope-End-Time (AVP Code: 1267)
Envelope-Reporting (AVP Code: 1268)
Envelope-Start-Time (AVP Code: 1269)
GGSN-Address (AVP Code: 847)
Offline-Charging (AVP Code: 1278)
PDP-Address (AVP Code: 1227)
• PDP-Context-Type (AVP Code: 1247)
  This AVP is present only in CCR-I.
• PS-Information (AVP Code: 874)
• Quota-Consumption-Time (AVP Code: 881):
  This optional AVP is present only in CCA.
• Quota-Holding-Time (AVP Code: 871):
  This optional AVP is present only in the CCA command. It is contained in the
  Multiple-Services-Credit-Control AVP. It applies equally to the granted time quota and to the
  granted volume quota.
• Reporting-Reason (AVP Code: 872):
  Gy currently does not support the POOL_EXHAUSTED (8) value. It is used in case of credit-pooling
  which is currently not supported.
• Service-Information (AVP Code: 873):
  Only PS-Information is supported.
• SGSN-Address (AVP Code: 1228)
• Time-Quota-Mechanism (AVP Code: 1270):
  The Gy server may include this AVP in an Multiple-Services-Credit-Control AVP when granting
  time quota.
• Time-Quota-Threshold (AVP Code: 868)
• Time-Quota-Type (AVP Code: 1271)
• Trigger (AVP Code: 1264)
• Trigger-Type (AVP Code: 870)
• Unit-Quota-Threshold (AVP Code: 1226)
• Volume-Quota-Threshold (AVP Code: 869)

• Supported Diameter AVPs specified in 3GPP TS 32.299 V8.1.0:
  • Auth-Application-Id (AVP Code: 258)
  • Destination-Host (AVP Code: 293)
  • Destination-Realm (AVP Code: 283)
  • Disconnect-Cause (AVP Code: 273)
  • Error-Message (AVP Code: 281)
  • Event-Timestamp (AVP Code: 55)
  • Failed-AVP (AVP Code: 279)
  • Multiple-Services-Credit-Control (AVP Code: 456)
  • Origin-Host (AVP Code: 264)
  • Origin-Realm (AVP Code: 296)
• Origin-State-Id (AVP Code: 278)
• Redirect-Host (AVP Code: 292)
• Redirect-Host-Usage (AVP Code: 261)
• Redirect-Max-Cache-Time (AVP Code: 262)
• Rating-Group (AVP Code: 432)
• Result-Code (AVP Code: 268)
• Route-Record (AVP Code: 282)
• Session-Id (AVP Code: 263)
• Service-Context-Id (AVP Code: 461)
• Service-Identifier (AVP Code: 439)
• Supported-Vendor-Id (AVP Code: 265)
• Termination-Cause (AVP Code: 295)
• Used-Service-Unit (AVP Code: 446)
• User-Name (AVP Code: 1)

Unsupported AVPs

This section lists the AVPs that are NOT supported.

• NOT Supported Credit Control AVPs specified in RFC 4006:
  • CC-Correlation-Id
  • CC-Money
  • CC-Sub-Session-Id
  • CC-Unit-Type (AVP Code: 454)
  • Check-Balance-Result
  • Cost-Information (AVP Code: 423)
  • Cost-Unit (AVP Code: 445)
  • Credit-Control
  • Currency-Code (AVP Code: 425)
  • Direct-Debiting-Failure-Handling (AVP Code: 428)
  • Exponent (AVP Code: 429)
  • G-S-U-Pool-Identifier (AVP Code: 453)
  • G-S-U-Pool-Reference (AVP Code: 457)
  • Requested-Action (AVP Code: 436)
  • Service-Parameter-Info (AVP Code: 440)
• Service-Parameter-Type (AVP Code: 441)
• Service-Parameter-Value (AVP Code: 442)
• Unit-Value (AVP Code: 424)
• Value-Digits (AVP Code: 447)

• NOT supported Diameter AVPs specified in 3GPP TS 32.299 V8.1.0:
  • Acct-Application-Id (AVP Code: 259)
  • Error-Reporting-Host (AVP Code: 294)
  • Experimental-Result (AVP Code: 297)
  • Experimental-Result-Code (AVP Code: 298)
  • Proxy-Host
  • Proxy-Info
  • Proxy-State

• NOT supported 3GPP-specific AVPs specified in 3GPP TS 32.299 V8.1.0:
  • 3GPP-CAMEL-Charging-Info (AVP Code: 24)
  • 3GPP-MS-TimeZone (AVP Code: 23)
  • 3GPP-PDSN-MCC-MNC
  • Authorised-QoS
  • Access-Network-Information
  • Adaptations
  • Additional-Content-Information
  • Additional-Type-Information
  • Address-Data
  • Address-Domain
  • Addressee-Type
  • Address-Type
  • AF-Correlation-Information
  • Alternate-Charged-Party-Address
  • Application-provided-Called-Party-Address
  • Application-Server
  • Application-Server-Information
  • Applic-ID
  • Associated-URI
  • Aux-Applic-Info
- Bearer-Service
- Called-Asserted-Identity
- Called-Party-Address
- Calling-Party-Address
- Cause-Code
- Charged-Party
- Class-Identifier
- Content-Class
- Content-Disposition
- Content-Length
- Content-Size
- Content-Type
- Data-Coding-Scheme
- Deferred-Location-Event-Type
- Delivery-Report-Requested
- Destination-Interface
- Domain-Name
- DRM-Content
- Early-Media-Description
- Event
- Event-Type
- Expires
- File-Repair-Supported
- IM-Information
- IMS-Charging-Identifier (ICID)
- IMS-Communication-Service-Identifier
- IMS-Information
- Incoming-Trunk-Group-ID
- Interface-Id
- Interface-Port
- Interface-Text
- Interface-Type
- Inter-Operator-Identifier
- LCS-APN
- LCS-Client-Dialed-By-MS
- LCS-Client-External-ID
- LCS-Client-ID
- LCS-Client-Name
- LCS-Client-Type
- LCS-Data-Coding-Scheme
- LCS-Format-Indicator
- LCS-Information
- LCS-Name-String
- LCS-Requestor-ID
- LCS-Requestor-ID-String
- Location-Estimate
- Location-Estimate-Type
- Location-Type
- Low-Balance-Indication
- MBMS-Information
- MBMS-User-Service-Type
- Media-Initiator-Flag
- Media-Initiator-Party
- Message-Body
- Message-Class
- Message-ID
- Message-Size
- Message-Type
- MMBox-Storage-Requested
- MM-Content-Type
- MMS-Information
- Node-Functionality
- Number-Of-Participants
- Number-Of-Received-Talk-Bursts
- Number-Of-Talk-Bursts
- Originating-IOI
- Originator
- Originator-Address
- Originator-Interface
- Originator-SCCP-Address
- Outgoing-Trunk-Group-ID
- Participant-Access-Priority
- Participants-Group
- Participants-Involved
- PDG-Address
- PDG-Charging-Id
- PoC-Change-Condition
- PoC-Change-Time
- PoC-Controlling-Address
- PoC-Group-Name
- PoC-Information
- PoC-Server-Role
- PoC-Session-Id
- PoC-Session-Initialization-Type
- PoC-Session-Type
- PoC-User-Role
- PoC-User-Role-IDs
- PoC-User-Role-info-Units
- Positioning-Data
- Priority
- PS-Append-Free-Format-Data (AVP Code: 867):
  The PCEF/GW ignores this AVP if no PS free format data is stored for the online charging session.
- PS-Free-Format-Data (AVP Code: 866)
- PS-Furnish-Charging-Information (AVP Code: 865)
- RAI (AVP Code: 909)
- Read-Reply-Report-Requested
- Received-Talk-Burst-Time
- Received-Talk-Burst-Volume
- Recipient-Address
- Recipient-SCCP-Address
• Refund-Information
• Remaining-Balance
• Reply-Applic-ID
• Reply-Path-Requested
• Requested-Party-Address
• Role-of-node
• SDP-Answer-Timestamp
• SDP-Media-Component
• SDP-Media-Description
• SDP-Media-Name
• SDP-Offer-Timestamp
• SDP-Session-Description
• SDP-TimeStamp
• Served-Party-IP-Address
• Service-Generic-Information
• Service-ID
• Service-Specific-Data
• Service-Specific-Info
• Service-Specific-Type
• SIP-Method
• SIP-Request-Timestamp
• SIP-Response-Timestamp
• SM-Discharge-Time
• SM-Message-Type
• SM-Protocol-Id
• SMSC-Address
• SMS-Information
• SMS-Node
• SM-Status
• SM-User-Data-Header
• Submission-Time
• Talk-Burst-Exchange
• Talk-Burst-Time
PLMN and Time Zone Reporting

For some implementations of online charging, the OCS requires the PCEF to reporting location-specific subscriber information. For certain subscriber types, subscriber information such as PLMN, Time Zone, and ULI can be sent over the Gy interface as the subscriber changes location, time zone, and serving networks to provide accurate online charging services. Such information can be reported independently from time and volume-based reporting.

PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature is enabled to support location event reporting based on triggers from Gx, when the following conditions are met:

- Session-based Gy is not initiated due to the absence of charging-actions in rulebase with Credit-Control enabled or due to delayed Gy session initiation.

- PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature is either enabled in the credit control group or through the use of triggers received from Gx.

If session-based Gy initiation fails or the session goes offline due to configuration or network issues, event-based Gy session will not be initiated.

Note that the failure-handling will not be supported for event-based Gy.

Though, in event-based Gy, multiple events can be reported independently and simultaneously this is presently not supported. If an event occurs when the CCA-Event (CCA-E) of the previously reported event is awaited, then the new event is queued and reported only when a CCA-E is received or the message is timed out.
To enable the PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature, the PCRF shall send the Trigger AVP (Trigger Type 1, Trigger Type 2) at the command level in a CCA.

The Event-based Gy session will be terminated in the following scenarios:

- On termination of the bearer/subscriber (subscriber level Gy).
- Initiation of session-based Gy session (delayed session initiation).
- Once the CCR-E transaction is complete and there are no further events to report.

For information on how to configure this feature, refer to the Gy Interface Support chapter in the administration guide for the product that uses the Gy interface functionality.

**Interworking between Session-based Gy and Event-based Gy**

If both session-based Gy and event-based Gy mode are activated, then session-based Gy will take precedence i.e. all the events will be reported through CCR-U if the corresponding triggers are enabled. Event-based Gy mode will be active only when session-based Gy has been disabled and has never been activated previously for this session during its lifetime.

**OCS Unreachable Failure Handling Feature**

The OCS Unreachable Failure Handling feature is required to handle when OCS goes down or unavailable. This feature is otherwise noted as Assume Positive for Gy.

The OCS is considered unavailable/unreachable in the following scenarios:

- PCEF transmits a CCR-U or CCR-I message but no response is received before the specified timeout
- Diameter Watchdog request times out to the current RDR, causing the TCP connection state to be marked down
- Diameter command-level error codes received in a CCA
- If the PCEF is unable to successfully verify transmission of a CCR-T, the PCEF will not assign interim quota, because the user has disconnected.

In 15.0 and later releases, the error result codes can be configured using the CLI command `servers-unreachable behavior-triggers initial-request { result-code { any-error | result-code | to-end-result-code } }` to trigger the server unreachable mode. The same is applicable for the update request also. For more information on the CLI command, see the Credit Control Configuration Mode Commands chapter of the Command Line Interface Reference. However, if the CLI command `no servers-unreachable behavior-triggers { initial-request | update-request } result-code { any-error | result-code | to-end-result-code }` is configured, then the default set of hard-coded error codes are applicable.

The default set is:

- UNABLE_TO_DELIVER 3002
- UNABLE_TOO_BUSY 3004
- LOOP_DETECTED 3005
- ELECTION_LOST 4003
- Permanent failures 5001-5999 except 5002, 5003 and 5031.
In 12.2 and later releases, existing failure handling mechanism is enhanced such that the subscriber can be allowed to browse for a pre-configured amount of interim-volume and/or interim-time if OCS becomes unreachable due to transport connection failure or gives an impression that OCS is unreachable owing to slow response for Diameter request messages.

The purpose of this feature is to support Gy based data sessions in the event of an OCS outage. Diameter client allows the user's data session to continue for some fixed quota and then retries the OCS server to restore normal functionality. This feature adds more granularity to the existing failure handling mechanism.

With the implementation of this feature, Gy reporting during outages is supported. A temporary time and/or volume quota is assigned to the user in the event of an OCS outage which will be used during the outage period.

When the OCS returns to service, the GW reports all used quota back to OCS and continues with normal Gy reporting.

For each DCCA-service, CLI control is available for the following options:

- Interim quota volume (in bytes) and quota time (seconds). Both values will apply simultaneously, if configured together and if either quota time or quota volume is exhausted, the Diameter client retries the OCS.
- Option to limit the number of times a session can be assigned a temporary quota. If the user exceeds this amount, the session will be terminated/converted to postpaid.

The quota value is part of the dcca-service configuration, and will apply to all subscribers using that dcca-service. The temporary quota will be specified in volume (bytes) and/or time (seconds) to allow enforcement of both quota tracking mechanisms individually or simultaneously.

When a user consumes the interim total quota or time configured for use during failure handling scenarios, the GW retries the OCS server to determine if functionality has been restored. In the event that services have been restored, quota assignment and tracking will proceed as per standard usage reporting procedures. Data used during the outage will be reported to the OCS.

In the event that the OCS services have not been restored, the GW re-allocates the configured amount of quota and/or time to the user. The GW reports all accumulated used data back to OCS when OCS is back online. If multiple retries and interim allocations occur, the GW reports quota used during all allocation intervals. This cycle will continue until OCS services have been successfully restored, or the maximum number of quota assignments has been exhausted.

Support for OCS unreachable CLI commands is added under Diameter Credit Control Configuration mode. For the P-GW/XGW/GGSN, this behavior will apply to all APNs and subscribers that have online charging enabled by the PCRF. In the HA, this behavior will apply to all users that have online charging enabled by the AAA. Settings will be applied to the dcca-service.

In Release 15.0, the following enhancements are implemented as part of the Assume Positive Gy feature:

- Configurable per error code treatment to enter assume positive mode
- Graceful session restart upon receipt of a 5002 error

**Important**

Note that the Graceful session restart feature is customer specific. For more information contact your Cisco account representative.

**Configurable per Error Code Treatment**
This feature allows the customers to configure error result codes using the CLI command "servers-unreachable behavior-triggers" that will trigger entering assume positive mode on the fly for CCR-Initial and CCR-Update messages. CCR-Terminate message is currently not supported.

Any error result codes from the range 3xxx to 5xxx can be specified using the CLI commands. This feature has been implemented to provide more flexibility and granularity in the way assume positive mode is triggered for error result codes.

**Graceful Session Restart**

Graceful session restart upon receipt of a 5002 error code is supported for server retried CCR-U messages during assume positive state. Also, any unreported usage from the time, server retried CCR-U sent till CCA-I is received, will be reported immediately by triggering CCR-U with usages for the same.

---

**Important**

Note that the Graceful session restart feature is customer specific. For more information contact your Cisco account representative.

---

Any pending updates are aborted once CCA-U with 5002 is received from the server. Also CCR-U is triggered immediately following session restart only if there are any unreported usages pending.

---

**Important**

When the server responds with 5002 error result code, it does not include any granted service units for the requested rating groups.

---

For more information on the commands introduced in support of this feature, see the Credit Control Configuration Mode Command chapter in the Command Line Interface Reference.

---

**Backpressure Handling**

Diameter base (Diabase) maintains an outbound stream. When an application wants to write a message into a socket, the message handle of those messages are stored in the outbound stream. Only on receiving the response to the corresponding request, the stored message handle is removed from the outbound stream. In order to rate-limit the message transactions based on the responses received from the server, ASR5k maintains a limit on the number of messages stored in the outbound stream. This is done using "max-outstanding <>" CLI (default value is 256). If the number of messages created by the application exceeds the max-outstanding limit, diabase sends a 'Backpressure' indication to the application to wait till it receives a decongestion indication from diabase to try again.

On receiving a response from the server, the corresponding request message handle will be removed from the outbound stream, creating a slot for another message to be written by the application. In order to intimate this slot availability, decongestion notification is sent to the registered application. The application in turn loops through all sessions and processes the pending trigger to be sent.

When the application loops through the sessions in the system, it traverse the sessions in a sorted order and checks each session whether it has to send a pending CCR-Initial or CCR-Terminate or CCR-Update. When the first session gets the slot to fill the outbound stream, it writes the message into the stream. Now the slot gets back into filled state, reaching the max-outstanding limit again. So the rest of the sessions will still continue to be in backpressured state.

Backpressured request like Credit-Control-Initial and Credit-Control-Terminate are given higher priority over Credit-Control-Update as they are concerned with the creation or termination of a session. So on top of the decongestion notification, DCCA has some internal timers which periodically try to send the message out.
So in case of heavy backpressure condition, the probability of CCR-I or CCR-T being sent out is more than CCR-U.

**Gy Backpressure Enhancement**

This feature facilitates maintaining a list of DCCA sessions that hit backpressure while creating a message i.e., backpressured list, eliminating the current polling procedure. This will maintain a single queue for all types of messages (CCR-I, CCR-U, CCR-T, CCR-E) that are backpressured. The messages will be sent in FIFO order from the queue.

After processing a session from the backpressure queue DCCA will check for the congestion status of the peer and continue only if the peer has empty slots in the outstanding message queue to accommodate further CCRs.

Releases prior to 16.0, the gateway has a max-outstanding configuration to manage a number of messages that are waiting for response from OCS. When the max-outstanding is configured to a low value, then the frequency to be in congested state is very high.

CPU utilization is very high if the max-outstanding count is low and network is congested.

In 16.0 and later releases, all DCCA sessions associated with the CCR messages that are triggered BACKPRESSURE (when max-outstanding has been reached) will be queued in backpressure list which is maintained per ACS manager instance (credit-control) level.

This list will not have any specific configurable limits on the number of sessions that will be queued in it. This is because there is an inherent limit that is already present which is dependent on the number of subscriber/DCCA sessions.

With this new separate backpressured list, CPU utilization will come down under high backpressure case.

**Gy Support for GTP based S2a/S2b**

For WiFi integration in P-GW, Gy support is provided for GTP based S2a/S2b in Release 18.0. This implementation is in compliance with standard Rel-11 non-3GPP access spec of 32.399: S5-120748 S5-131017 S5-143090.

As part of this enhancement, the following AVP changes are introduced:

- Added TWAN as a new enum value for Serving-Node-Type AVP
- Added a new Diameter AVP "TWAN-User-Location-Info". This is a grouped AVP and it contains the UE location in a Trusted WLAN Access Network (TWAN): BSSID and SSID of the access point.

The TWAN AVPs will be effective only for 3GPP release 11 and it is added only to the standard Gy dictionary. That is, the TWAN AVP will be included in CCR-I/CCR-U/CCR-T messages only when the CLI command "diameter update-dictionary-avps 3gpp-rel11" is configured.

**Generating OOC/ROC with Changing Association between Rule and RG**

The existing Gy implementation prevents duplicate Out-of-Credit (OOC) / Reallocation of Credit (ROC) report for the same rule to the PCRF. Subscriber throttling with the same rule with different Rating-Group across OOC event does not work. To overcome this, the following implementation is considered:
When a Rating-Group runs out of credit, OOC is sent to all rules that are currently associated with that Rating-Group. This is done irrespective of whether that rule was already OOC’d or not. Similarly, when a Rating-Group gets quota after being in OOC state, a ROC is sent to all rules that are currently associated with that Rating-Group. This is done irrespective of whether that rule was already ROC’d or not.

In releases prior to 18, MSCC’s state was previously being maintained at MSCC and rule-level to suppress OOC/ROC events. So if MSCC triggered an OOC/ROC the same was suppressed by the status maintained at the rule-level if the previous event on the rule was the same.

In 18 and later releases, the rule level status bits are no longer used to avoid similar back-to-back OOC/ROC events. Now, the triggering of OOC/ROC events will solely be dependent on the MSCC state and triggers.

Customers might see an increase in OOC/ROC events on Gx if they change the association of the rule and RG or if they use the Override feature.

Static Rulebase for CCR

An APN/subscriber can have a single rulebase applied to it, but allowing a static rulebase configuration to always pass a different or same rulebase to the OCS through CCR messages.

A new CLI command "charging-rulebase-name rulebase_name" has been introduced under Credit Control (CC) group to override/change the rulebase name present in APN/subscriber template, in the CCR AVP "Charging-Rule-Base-Name". The rulebase value configured in CC group will be sent to OCS via CCR. If this CLI command is not configured, then the rulebase obtained from APN/subscriber template will be sent to OCS.

The configured value of rulebase under CC group is sent in all CCR (I/U/T) messages. This implies that any change in rulebase value in CC group during mid-session gets reflected in the next CCR message.

This feature, when activated with the CLI command, reduces the complication involved in configuration of services like adding and removing services per enterprise on the OCS system.

CC based Selective Gy Session Control

This section describes the overview and implementation of the Selective Gy Session Control feature based on Charging Characteristics (CC) profile of the subscriber.

This section discusses the following topics for this feature:

- Feature Description, on page 163
- Configuring CC based Selective Gy Session Control, on page 164
- Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Selective Gy Session Control Feature, on page 165

Feature Description

The functionality that allows users to configure certain Charging Characteristics (CC) values as prepaid/postpaid is available for GGSN service. In Release 17, this functionality is extended to P-GW service.

To enable/disable Gy session based on the CC value received, the APN configuration is extended so that additional credit-control-groups/prepaid prohibited value can be configured for each of the CC values.
The **cc profile cc-profile-index prepaid prohibited** CLI command is used to configure the CC values to disable Credit-Control based charging. The P-GW/GGSN/SAEGW service subscriber sessions using this APN, can use this configuration to stop the triggering of Gy messages towards the OCS.

The UE provides the charging characteristics value and the active subscriber is connected through an APN. The CC index mapping is done for a corresponding CC group/prepaid prohibited value configured under the APN. Depending on the match, the Gy session is enabled or disabled towards the OCS.

The Session controller stores/updates the APN configuration in the AAA manager. During the session setup, the session manager fills the CC value received in session authenticate request, and sends it to AAA manager. The AAA manager matches this against the locally stored APN configuration, and selects the desired credit-control-group/prepaid-prohibited configuration for the session. Then the session manager passes this credit-control-group/prepaid-prohibited information received from the AAA manager to ACS manager.

When the local authentication (session setup request) is done, the credit-control group with the matching charging characteristic is selected and used. If there is no matching charging characteristic configuration found for the credit-control group selection, then the default credit-control group for the APN is selected.

When a particular CC is configured as postpaid, any session with this CC does not trigger Gy connection. Any change in the CC during the lifetime of session is ignored.

The CC based Gy Session Controlling feature is applicable only for the CC value received via GTP-Auth-Request, and during the session establishment. The CC value updated via AAA/PCRF after the session setup will not cause any change in already selected credit-control group. Once the credit-control group is selected after session setup, this feature is not applicable.

### Relationships to Other Features

This feature can also be used when the CC profile configuration is enabled through the GGSN service. When the CC profile is configured under APN service and GGSN service, the prepaid prohibited configuration for the matching CC profile is applied irrespective of the services.

### Limitations

The following are the limitations of this feature:

- One charging characteristic value can be mapped to only one credit-control-group/prepaid-prohibited configuration within one APN.

- The charging-characteristic based OCS selection is possible only during the session-setup. Once the credit-control-group is selected (after session setup), this feature is not applicable.

### Configuring CC based Selective Gy Session Control

The following sections provide the configuration commands to configure the Gy Session Control feature based on the CC profile of the subscriber.

### Configuring CC Value

The following commands are used to configure Charging Characteristic values as postpaid/prepaid to disable/enable Gy session towards the OCS.

```
configure
  context context_name
```
apn apn_name
cc-profile { cc_profile_index | any } { prepaid-prohibited | credit-control-group cc_group_name }
end

Notes:

- *cc_profile_index*: Specifies the CC profile index. *cc_profile_index* must be an integer from 0 through 15.

- *any*: This keyword is applicable for any non-overridden cc-profile index. This keyword has the least priority over specific configuration for a CC profile value. So, configuring *any* keyword will not override other specific configurations under APN.

- *prepaid-prohibited*: Disables prepaid Gy session for the configured profile index.

- *cc_group_name*: Specifies name of the credit control group as an alphanumeric string of 1 through 63 characters.

- *no cc-profile cc_profile_index*: This command falls back to "any" cc-profile behavior irrespective of the CC profile index value configured.

Verifying the Selective Gy Session Control Configuration

Use the following command in Exec mode to display/verify the configuration of Selective Gy Session Control feature.

```
show configuration
```

Monitoring and Troubleshooting the Selective Gy Session Control Feature

This section provides information regarding show commands and/or their outputs in support of the Selective Gy Session Control feature.

```
show active-charging sessions
```

The "Credit-Control" field that appears as part of the show active-charging sessions | callid | imsi | msisdn command output enables the user to determine the credit control state as “On” for online charging enabled session or “Off” for prepaid prohibited session and monitor the subscriber session.
Configuring Gy Interface Support

To configure Gy interface support:

**Step 1** Configure the core network service as described in this Administration Guide.

**Step 2** Configure Gy interface support as described in the sections Configuring GGSN / P-GW / IPSG Gy Interface Support, on page 166 and Configuring HA / PDSN Gy Interface Support, on page 167.

**Step 3** Configure Event-based Gy support as described in Configuring PLMN and Time Zone Reporting, on page 168.

**Step 4** Optional. Configure OCS Unreachable Failure Handling Feature or Assume Positive for Gy Feature as described in Configuring Server Unreachable Feature, on page 169.

**Step 5** Optional. Configure Static Rulebase for CCR as described in Configuring Static Rulebase for CCR, on page 170.

**Step 6** Optional. Configure Gy for GTP based S2a/S2b as described in Configuring Gy for GTP based S2a/S2b, on page 170.

**Step 7** Optional. Configure your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command `save configuration`. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Important** Commands used in the configuration examples in this section provide base functionality to the extent that the most common or likely commands and/or keyword options are presented. In many cases, other optional commands and/or keyword options are available. Refer to the Command Line Interface Reference for complete information regarding all commands.

Configuring GGSN / P-GW / IPSG Gy Interface Support

To configure the standard Gy interface support for GGSN/P-GW/IPSG, use the following configuration:

```bash
configure
context <context_name>
diameter endpoint <endpoint_name>
  origin realm <realm>
  origin host <diameter_host> address <ip_address>
  peer <peer> realm <realm> address <ip_address>
exit
exit
active-charging service <ecs_service_name>
credit-control [ group <cc_group_name> ]
  diameter origin endpoint <endpoint_name>
  diameter peer-select peer <peer> realm <realm>
  diameter pending-timeout <timeout_period>
  diameter session failover
  diameter dictionary <dictionary>
  failure-handling initial-request continue
  failure-handling update-request continue
  failure-handling terminate-request continue
exit
context <context_name>
apn <apn_name>
```
selection-mode sent-by-ms
ims-auth-service <service>
ip access-group <access_list_name> in
ip access-group <access_list_name> out
ip context-name <context_name>
active-charging rulebase <rulebase_name>
credit-control-group <cc_group_name>
end

Notes:

• For information on configuring IP access lists, refer to the Access Control Lists chapter in the System Administration Guide.

• For more information on configuring ECS ruledefs, refer to the ACS Ruledef Configuration Mode Commands chapter in the Command Line Interface Reference.

• For more information on configuring ECS charging actions, refer to the ACS Charging Action Configuration Mode Commands chapter in the Command Line Interface Reference.

• For more information on configuring ECS rulebases, refer to the ACS Rulebase Configuration Mode Commands chapter in the Command Line Interface Reference.

Configuring HA / PDSN Gy Interface Support

To configure HA / PDSN Gy interface support, use the following configuration:

configure
context <context_name>
diameter endpoint <endpoint_name>
  origin realm <realm>
  origin host <diameter_host> address <ip_address>
  peer <peer> realm <realm> address <ip_address>
exit
exit
active-charging service <ecs_service_name>
ruledef <ruledef_name>
  ip any-match = TRUE
exit
charging-action <charging_action_name>
  content-id <content_id>
  cca charging credit rating-group <rating_group>
exit
rulebase <rulebase_name>
  action priority <action_priority> ruledef <ruledef_name> charging-action
  <charging_action_name>
exit
credit-control [ group <cc_group_name> ]
  diameter origin endpoint <endpoint_name>
  diameter peer-select peer <peer> realm <realm>
  diameter pending-timeout <timeout>
  diameter session failover
  diameter dictionary <dictionary>
  failure-handling initial-request continue
  failure-handling update-request continue
Configuring PLMN and Time Zone Reporting

PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature requires a credit-control group to be defined in the APN or subscriber configuration or there must be a default credit-control group configured. The following CLI commands are available to enable/disable PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature.

To enable PLMN and Time Zone Reporting through subscriber-template, use the following configuration:

```
configure
  context <context_name>
    subscriber name <subscriber_name>
      dns primary <primary_ipaddress>
      dns secondary <secondary_ipaddress>
      ip access-group test in
      ip access-group test out
      ip context-name <context_name>
      credit-control-client event-based-charging
      active-charging rulebase <rulebase_name>
    exit
  end
```

Notes:

- The **credit-control-client event-based-charging** command should be used to enable PLMN and Time Zone Reporting.

For more information on configuring PLMN and Time Zone Reporting feature, refer to the Command Line Interface Reference.
To enable PLMN and Time Zone Reporting through APN template, use the following configuration:

```plaintext
configure
  context <context_name>
    apn <apn_name>
      selection-mode sent-by-ms
      accounting-mode none
      ip access-group test in
      ip access-group test out
      ip context-name <context_name>
      ip address pool name <pool_name>
      credit-control-client event-based-charging
      active-charging rulebase <rulebase_name>
      exit
  end
Rest of the parameters needed for Event-based Gy such as dictionary, endpoint will be picked from the credit-control group.

In a scenario where the triggers are configured through the CLI command and another set of triggers are also received from Gx, then the triggers from Gx will have a higher priority.

Configuring Server Unreachable Feature

The Server Unreachable feature requires a failure handling behavior to be defined in the Diameter Credit Control configuration. The following CLI commands are available to enable/disable OCS Unreachable Failure Handling feature.

To enable OCS Unreachable Failure Handling feature, use the following configuration:

```plaintext
configure
  require active-charging
  active-charging service <service_name>
    credit-control
      servers-unreachable { initial-request | update-request } { continue | terminate } | |
      after-interim-volume <bytes> | after-interim-time <seconds> } + server-retries <retry_count>
      servers-unreachable behavior-triggers { initial-request | update-request } transport-failure
      [ response-timeout | tx-expiry
      servers-unreachable behavior-triggers initial-request { result-code { any-error | result-code
      [ to end-result-code ] } }
      servers-unreachable behavior-triggers update-request { result-code { any-error | result-code
      [ to end-result-code ] } }
      end

Notes:

  • This CLI command "servers-unreachable { initial-request | update-request } { continue | terminate
  } { after-interim-volume ... " allows configuring interim-volume and interim-time in the following ways:
  • after-interim-volume <bytes> alone followed by server-retries.
  • after-interim-time <secs> alone followed by server-retries.
  • after-interim-volume <bytes> after-interim-time <secs> followed by server-retries.
This CLI command "servers-unreachable behavior-triggers" is used to trigger the servers-unreachable failure handling at either Tx expiry or Response timeout (This CLI is similar to retry-after-tx-expiry in "failure-handling update-request continue retry-after-tx-expiry" command.).

This CLI command "servers-unreachable behavior-triggers initial-request { result-code { any-error | result-code | to end-result-code } }" is used to trigger the servers-unreachable failure handling based on the configured Diameter error result codes.

For more information on configuring this feature, refer to the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Configuring Static Rulebase for CCR**

To allow static configuration of rulebase name to be passed to OCS via CCR message, use the following configuration:

```plaintext
configure
  require active-charging
  active-charging service service_name
  credit-control group ccgroup_name
  charging-rulebase-name rulebase_name
  end
```

Notes:

- By default, the rulebase obtained from APN/subscriber template will be sent to OCS through the CCR message.

For more information on configuring this feature, refer to the Command Line Interface Reference.

**Configuring Gy for GTP based S2a/S2b**

To provide Gy Support for WiFi integration in P-GW for GTP based S2a/S2b, use the following configuration:

```plaintext
configure
  require active-charging
  active-charging service service_name
  credit-control group ccgroup_name
  diameter update-dictionary-avps 3gpp-rel11
  | default | no | diameter update-dictionary-avps
  end
```

Notes:

- 3gpp-rel11: Provides support for 3GPP Rel.11 specific AVPs in the standard Gy dictionary.

**Gathering Statistics**

This section explains how to gather Gy related statistics and configuration information.

In the following table, the first column lists what statistics to gather, and the second column lists the action to perform.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Statistics/Information</strong></th>
<th><strong>Action to perform</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complete statistics for ECS sessions.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging sessions full</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Detailed information for the Active Charging Service (ACS)</td>
<td><code>show active-charging service all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information on all rule definitions configured in the service.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging ruledef all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information on all charging actions configured in the service.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging charging-action all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information on all rulebases configured in the service.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging rulebase all</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics of the Credit Control application, DCCA.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging credit-control statistics</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>States of the Credit Control application's sessions, DCCA.</td>
<td><code>show active-charging credit-control session-states [ rulebase &lt;rulebase_name&gt; ] [ content-id &lt;content_id&gt; ]</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ICAP Interface Support

This chapter provides information on configuring the external Active Content Filtering servers for a core network service subscriber. This chapter also describes the configuration and commands that are used to implement this feature.

It is recommended that you select the configuration example that best meets your service model, and configure the required elements for that model, as described in respective product Administration Guide, before using the procedures in this chapter.

The following products currently support ICAP interface functionality:

- GGSN
- P-GW

ICAP Interface Support Overview

This feature supports streamlined ICAP interface to leverage Deep Packet Inspection (DPI) to enable external application servers to provide their services without performing DPI, and without being inserted in the data flow. For example with an external Active Content Filtering (ACF) Platform.
A high-level view of the streamlined ICAP interface support for external ACF is shown in the following figure:

*Figure 19: High-Level View of Streamlined ICAP Interface with external ACF*

The system with ECS is configured to support DPI and the system uses this capability for content charging as well. WAP and HTTP traffic is content filtered over the ICAP interface. RTSP traffic that contains adult content can also be content filtered on the ICAP interface. Only the RTSP Request packets will be considered for content filtering over the ICAP interface.

If a subscriber initiates a WAP (WAP1.x or WAP2.0) or Web session, the subsequent GET/POST request is detected by the DPI function. The URL of the GET/POST request is extracted and passed, along with subscriber identification information and the subscriber request, in an ICAP message to the application server. The application server checks the URL on the basis of its category and other classifications like, type, access level, content category and decides if the request should be authorized, blocked, or redirected by answering to the GET/POST with:

- A 200 OK message if the request is accepted.
- A 302 Redirect message in case of redirection. This redirect message includes the URL to which the subscriber must be redirected.
- Deny-response code 200 for RTSP requests is not supported. Only 403 "Forbidden" deny-response code will be supported.

Depending on the response received, the system with ECS will either pass the request unmodified, or discard the message and respond to the subscriber with the appropriate redirection or block message.

Content charging is performed by the Active Charging Service (ACS) only after the request has been controlled by the application server. This guarantees the appropriate interworking between the external application and content-based billing. In particular, this guarantees that charging will be applied to the appropriate request in case of redirection, and that potential charging-based redirections (i.e. Advice of Charge, Top Up page, etc.) will not interfere with the decisions taken by the application server.

Functions of the ACF include:

- Retrieval of subscriber policies based on the subscriber identity passed in the ICAP message
ICAP Interface Support

Failure Action on Retransmitted Packets

ICAP rating is enabled for retransmitted packet when default ICAP failure action was taken on an ICAP request for that flow. ICAP default failure action is taken on the pending ICAP request for a connection when the connection needs to be reset and there is no other redundant connection available. For example, in the ICAP request timeout and ICAP connection timeout scenarios. In these cases the retransmitted packet in the uplink direction is sent for ICAP rating again.

In case of WAP CO, uplink retransmitted packet for the WAP transactions for which ICAP failure action was taken will be sent for ICAP rating. WSP header of the retransmitted packet is not parsed by the WSP analyzer. The URL received in the previous packet for that transaction is used for ICAP rating. If failure action was taken on multiple WTP transactions for the same flow (case: WTP concatenated GET request) then uplink retransmitted packet for each of the transaction is sent for rating again.

In case of HTTP, uplink retransmitted packets for the HTTP flow on which ICAP failure action is taken is sent for ICAP rating. The URL present in the current secondary session (last uplink request) is used for ICAP rating. However, if there were multiple outstanding ICAP request for the same flow (pipelined request) then for the retransmitted packet the URL that will be sent for rating will be that of the last GET request.

Retransmission in various cases of failure-action taken on re-transmitted packets when the ICAP response is not received for the original request and the retransmitted request comes in:

- **WSP CO:**
  - Permit: The uplink packet is sent for ICAP rating and depending on the ICAP response the WTP transaction is allowed/blocked. It is possible that the WAP gateway sends the response for the permitted GET request. Hence, there is a race condition and the subscriber may be able to view the web page even thought the rating was redirect or content insert.
  - Content Insert: The retransmitted packet is not sent for ICAP rating.
  - Redirect: The retransmitted packet is not sent for ICAP rating.
  - Discard: The uplink packet is sent for ICAP rating and depending on the ICAP response the WTP transaction is allowed/blocked.
  - Terminate flow: The uplink packet is sent for ICAP rating and depending on the ICAP response the WTP transaction is allowed or blocked. The WAP gateway may send an Abort transaction for this GET request if the WSP disconnect packet sent while terminating the flow is received by the WAP gateway.

- **HTTP:**
  - Permit: The uplink packet is sent for ICAP rating and depending on the ICAP response the last HTTP GET request. It is possible that the HTTP server sends the response for the permitted GET request. Hence there is a race condition and the subscriber may be able to view the web page even thought the rating was redirect or content insert.
  - Content Insert: Retransmitted packets are dropped and not charged.
  - Redirect: Retransmitted packets are dropped and not charged.
Discard: The uplink packet is sent for ICAP rating and depending on the ICAP response the WTP transaction allowed/blocked.

Terminate flow: Retransmitted packets are dropped and not charged.

RTSP:

The following scenarios describe the failure actions where an RTSP request is received from the client. If ICAP is enabled, then the request goes to the ICAP server for content filtering.

- Allow: If the failure action configured is "allow", the RTSP request packet is sent out after applying the appropriate disposition action. Here, the flow remains the same as in the case if the ICAP response received is 200 OK.

- Content Insert: If the failure action configured is "content-insertion <string of size 1 to 128>", then this failure action for RTSP request will not be supported. Instead the failure action "Discard" for such an RTSP request will be supported.

- Redirect-URL: If the failure action configured is "redirect-url <string of size 1 to 128>", then a TCP FIN_ACK packet with an RTSP "302 Moved Temporarily" response header is inserted towards the client containing the said URL for redirection. A TCP RST packet is inserted towards the server. The underlying TCP connection is thus closed. If the RTSP client wants to retry to the redirected URL, the opening of a new TCP connection must be initiated.

- Discard: If the failure action configured is "discard", then the RTSP request packet received from the client is quietly discarded and no notification is sent to the client.

- Terminate flow: If the failure action configured is "terminate-flow", then the TCP connection is torn down by injecting a TCP FIN-ACK towards the client and a RST packet towards the server. However, no notification will be sent to the RTSP client and the server regarding this flow termination.

Supported Networks and Platforms

This feature supports ST16 and Cisco Chassis for the core network services configured on the system.

License Requirements

External Content Filtering Server support through Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) interface is a licensed Cisco feature. A separate feature license may be required. Contact your Cisco account representative for detailed information on specific licensing requirements.

For information on installing and verifying licenses, refer to the Managing License Keys section of the Software Management Operations chapter in the System Administration Guide.

Configuring ICAP Interface Support

This section describes how to configure the Content Filtering Server Group (CFSG) through Internet Content Adaptation Protocol (ICAP) interface between ICAP client and ACF server (ICAP server).
This section provides the minimum instruction set for configuring external content filtering servers on ICAP interface on the system. For more information on commands that configure additional parameters and options, refer to CFSG Configuration Mode Commands chapter in Command Line Interface Reference.

To configure the system to provide ICAP interface support for external content filtering servers:

**Step 1** Create the Content Filtering Server Group and create ICAP interface with origin (local) IP address of chassis by applying the example configuration in Creating ICAP Server Group and Address Binding, on page 177.

**Step 2** Specify the active content filtering server (ICAP server) IP addresses and configure other parameters for ICAP server group by applying the example configuration in Configuring ICAP Server and Other Parameters, on page 177.

**Step 3** Configure the content filtering mode to external content filtering server group mode in ECS rule base by applying the example configuration in Configuring ECS Rulebase for ICAP Server Group, on page 178.

**Step 4** Optional. Configure the charging action to forward HTTP/RTSP/WAP GET request to external content filtering servers on ICAP interface in Active Charging Configuration mode by applying the example configuration in Configuring Charging Action for ICAP Server Group, on page 178.

**Step 5** Verify your ICAP interface and external content filtering server group configuration by following the steps in Verifying the ICAP Server Group Configuration, on page 179.

**Step 6** Save your configuration to flash memory, an external memory device, and/or a network location using the Exec mode command `save configuration`. For additional information on how to verify and save configuration files, refer to the System Administration Guide and the Command Line Interface Reference.

---

**Creating ICAP Server Group and Address Binding**

Use the following example to create the ICAP server group and bind the IP addresses:

```
configure
  context <icap_ctxt_name> [-noconfirm]
  content-filtering server-group <icap_svr_grp_name> [-noconfirm]
    origin address <ip_address>
end
```

Notes:

- `<ip_address>` is local IP address of the CFSG endpoint.

**Configuring ICAP Server and Other Parameters**

Use the following example to configure the active content filtering (ICAP server) and other related parameters:

```
configure
  context <icap_context_name>
  content-filtering server-group <icap_server_grp_name>
    icap server <ip_address> [port <port_number>] [max <max_msgs>] [priority <priority>] [standby]
    deny-message <msg_string>
```
response-timeout <timeout>
connection retry-timeout <retry_timeout>
failure-action { allow | content-insertion <content_string> | discard | redirect-url <url> | terminate-flow }
dictionary { custom1 | custom2 | custom3 | standard }
end

Notes:

• In 8.1 and later releases, a maximum of five ICAP servers can be configured per Content Filtering Server Group. In release 8.0, only one ICAP Server can be configured per Content Filtering Server Group.

• The standby keyword can be used to configure the ICAP server as standby. A maximum of ten active and standby ICAP servers per Content Filtering Server Group can be configured. The active and standby servers under the same server group can be configured to work in active-standby mode.

• The maximum outstanding request per ICAP connection configured using the optional max <max_msgs> keyword is limited to one. Therefore, any other value configured using the max keyword will be ignored.

• Optional. To configure the ICAP URL extraction behavior, in the Content Filtering Server Group configuration mode, enter the following command:

  url-extraction { after-parsing | raw }

By default, percent-encoded hex characters in URLs sent from the ACF client to the ICAP server will be converted to corresponding ASCII characters and sent.

Configuring ECS Rulebase for ICAP Server Group

Use the following example to configure the content filtering mode to ICAP server mode in the ECS rulebase for content filtering:

configure
  require active-charging [ optimized-mode ]
  active-chargingservice <acs_svc_name> [-noconfirm ]
  rulebase <rulebase_name> [-noconfirm ]
  content-filtering mode server-group <cf_server_group>
end

Notes:

• In release 8.1, the optimized-mode keyword enables ACS in the Optimized mode, wherein ACS functionality is managed by SessMtrs. In release 8.1, ACS must be enabled in the Optimized mode.

• In release 8.3, the optimized-mode keyword is obsolete. With or without this keyword ACS is always enabled in Optimized mode.

• In release 8.0 and release 9.0 and later, the optimized-mode keyword is not available.

Configuring Charging Action for ICAP Server Group

Use the following example to configure the charging action to forward HTTP/WAP GET request to ICAP server for content processing:

configure
  active-chargingservice <acs_svc_name>
  charging-action <charging_action_name> [-noconfirm ]
content-filtering processing server-group
end

Verifying the ICAP Server Group Configuration

This section explains how to display and review the configurations after saving them in a .cfg file and also to retrieve errors and warnings within an active configuration for a service.

Important All commands listed here are under Exec mode. Not all commands are available on all platforms.

These instructions are used to verify the configuration for this feature.

Step 1
Verify your ICAP Content Filtering Server Group configuration by entering the following command in Exec Mode:
show content-filtering server-group
The following is a sample output. In this example, an ICAP Content Filtering server group named icap_cfsg1 was configured.

    Content Filtering Group: icap_cfsg1
    Context: icap1
    Origin Address: 1.2.3.4
    ICAP Address(Port): 1.2.3.4(1344)
    Max Outstanding: 256
    Priority: 1
    Response Timeout: 30(secs) Connection Retry Timeout: 30(secs)
    Dictionary: standard
    Timeout Action: terminate-flow
    Deny Message: "Service Not Subscribed"
    URL-extraction: after-parsing
    Content Filtering Group Connections: NONE

Total content filtering groups matching specified criteria: 1

Step 2
Verify any configuration error in your configuration by entering the following command in Exec Mode:
show configuration errors